An Introduction to TEI simplePrint

Lou Burnard  Martin Mueller  Sebastian Rahtz  James Cummings  Magdalena Turska
January 2017
Preface
This document is the formal specification for TEI simplePrint, an entry-level customization of
the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines, intended to be generally useful to a large variety
of encoders attempting to cope with the standardized representation of a variety of documents
in digital form.

Like every other TEI customization, TEI simplePrint was designed for use with a particular
type of material. If the material you are planning to encode matches the following criteria, then
TEI simplePrint is for you. If it does not, it may not be.

• You are encoding print material, rather than manuscript: simplePrint provides no way of
  encoding manuscript features such as correction, deletion, or scribal variation

• You are encoding material from the Early Modern period (i.e., up to the end of the
  nineteenth century): some of the features for which simplePrint provides encodings are
  rarely found in modern materials.

• You are encoding material written, broadly speaking, within the Western European
  tradition, using largely Western European characters. simplePrint does provide facilities
  for encoding short passages in non Western European languages, but many features needed
  to cope with Asian or ancient scripts are missing.

• Your intention is to provide a relatively simple encoding for a large amount of material,
  rather than a rich encoding of a small amount of material: simplePrint is intended to
  help libraries and archives wishing to go beyond basic digital facsimiles, rather than
  to support specialist research. It does not, for example, include features for detailed
  linguistic tagging beyond simple word-level tagging, nor for specialised text types such as
  dictionaries, historical or biographical databases, etc.

If your needs go beyond those summarized here, simplePrint may still be a good point of
departure, and may be very useful as a basis for the creation of your own TEI customisation.
We don’t however discuss the creation of a TEI customization in this document: the TEI website
provides a number of links to tutorial material and tools which may assist in this process.

The present document is intended to be generally comprehensible and accessible, but does
assume some knowledge of XML (the encoding language used by the TEI), and of the way it is
used by the TEI. Further information on both these topics are available from many places, not
least the TEI’s own web site at http://www.tei-c.org.

The TEI simplePrint schema was first elaborated as a part of the TEI Simple project funded
by the Andrew W. Mellon Foundation (2012-2014). The project sought to define a new highly-
constrained and prescriptive subset of the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) Guidelines suited
to the representation of early modern print materials, a formally-defined set of processing
rules which permit modern web applications to easily present and analyze the encoded texts,
mapping to other ontologies, and processes to describe the encoding status and richness of a TEI
digital text. Its choice of elements reflected the practices followed in the encoding of large-scale
literary archives, notably those produced by the Text Creation Partnership. Practice of other
comparable archives such as the German Text Archive was also taken into account.

The most distinctive feature of TEI simplePrint is its use of the TEI Processing Model,
which provides explicit and recommended options for the display or processing of every textual
element. Programmers developing systems to handle texts encoded with TEI simplePrint do
not have to look beyond this when building stylesheets or other components. This greatly
reduces the complexity of developing applications that will work reliably and consistently for
many users and across large corpora of documents.

The TEI simplePrint schema and the TEI Processing Model were first defined by a
working group led by Martin Mueller (Northwestern University) and Sebastian Rahtz (Oxford...
An Introduction to TEI simplePrint

University). Major contributions to the project were made by Magdalena Turska (Oxford University), James Cummings (Oxford University), and Brian Pytlik Zillig. The changes to the TEI scheme needed to support the TEI Processing Model were reviewed and approved by the TEI Technical Council for inclusion in release 3.0.0 of TEI P5 in February 2016. The present document was extensively revised and extended by Lou Burnard in July 2016 for submission to the TEI Technical Council.
1 A Short Example

We begin with a short example. How should we go about transferring into a computer a passage of prose, such as the start of the last chapter of Charlotte Brontë’s novel *Jane Eyre*? We might start by simply copying what we see on the printed page, typing it in such a way that what appears on the screen looks as similar as possible, for example, by retaining the original line breaks, by introducing blanks to represent the layout of the original headings, page breaks, and paragraphs, and so forth. Of course, the possibilities are limited by the nature of the computer program we use to capture the text: it may not be possible for example to reflect accurately the typographic characteristics of our source with all such software. Some characters in the printed text (such as the accented letter $a$ in *faâl* or the long dash) may not be available on the keyboard; some typographic distinctions (such as that between small capitals and full capitals) may not be readily accessible. Our first attempt tries to mimic the appearance of the former, and simply ignores the latter.

CHAPTER 38

READER, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --

'Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning.' The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only --

'Have you, miss? Well, for sure!'

A short time after she pursued, 'I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed'; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear.

'I telled Mary how it would be,' he said: 'I knew what Mr Edward' (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) -- 'I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss!' and he politely pulled his forelock.

'Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.'

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words --

'She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies.' And again, 'If she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faa\l, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.'

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and

474

JANE EYRE 475

Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she
A SHORT EXAMPLE

would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she
would come and see me.
'She had better not wait till then, Jane,' said Mr Rochester, when I
read her letter to him; 'if she does, she will be too late, for our honey-
moon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your
grave or mine.'

How St John received the news I don't know: he never answered
the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote
to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester's name or allud-
ing to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious,
kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspond-
ence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who
live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things.

This transcription suffers from a number of shortcomings:

- the page numbers and running titles are intermingled with the text in a way which makes
  it difficult for software to distinguish them;

- no distinction is made between single quotation marks and apostrophe, so it is difficult to
  be certain exactly which passages are in direct speech;

- the preservation of the copy text’s hyphenation means that simple-minded search programs
  will not find words broken across a line;

- the accented letter in faâl and the long dash have been rendered by ad hoc keying
  conventions (faa\l) which follow no standard pattern and will be processed correctly only
  if the transcriber remembers to mention them in the documentation;

- paragraph divisions are marked only by the use of white space, and hard carriage returns
  have been introduced at the end of each line. Consequently, if the size of type used to
  display the text changes, reformattting will be problematic.

We now present the same passage, as it might be encoded in TEI simplePrint. As we shall
see, there are many ways in which this encoding could be extended, but as a minimum, the TEI
approach allows us to represent the following distinctions in a standardized way:

- Paragraph and chapter divisions are now marked explicitly by means of tags rather than
  implicitly by white space.

- Apostrophes are retained, but the quotation marks indicating direct speech have been
  removed, and direct speech is now marked explicitly by means of a tag.

- The accented letter and the long dash are accurately represented, using the appropriate
  Unicode character.

- Page divisions have been marked with an empty <pb> tag; the page heading and running
  text have been suppressed.

- The lineation of the original has also been suppressed and words broken by typographic
  accident at the end of a line have been re-assembled without comment.

- For convenience of proof reading, a new line has been introduced at the start of each
  paragraph, but the indentation is removed.
Reader, I married him. A quiet wedding we had: he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present. When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said —

Mary, I have been married to Mr Rochester this morning. The housekeeper and her husband were of that decent, phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable piece of news without incurring the danger of having one's ears pierced by some shrill ejaculation and subsequently stunned by a torrent of wordy wonderment. Mary did look up, and she did stare at me; the ladle with which she was basting a pair of chickens roasting at the fire, did for some three minutes hang suspended in air, and for the same space of time John's knives also had rest from the polishing process; but Mary, bending again over the roast, said only —

Have you, miss? Well, for sure!

A short time after she pursued, I seed you go out with the master, but I didn't know you were gone to church to be wed; and she basted away. John, when I turned to him, was grinning from ear to ear. I telled Mary how it would be, he said: I knew what Mr Edward (John was an old servant, and had known his master when he was the cadet of the house, therefore he often gave him his Christian name) — I knew what Mr Edward would do; and I was certain he would not wait long either: and he's done right, for aught I know. I wish you joy, miss! and he politely pulled his forelock.

Thank you, John. Mr Rochester told me to give you and Mary this.

I put into his hand a five-pound note. Without waiting to hear more, I left the kitchen. In passing the door of that sanctum some time after, I caught the words —

She'll happen do better for him nor ony o' t' grand ladies. And again, if she ben't one o' th' handsomest, she's noan faàl, and varry good-natured; and i' his een she's fair beautiful, onybody may see that.

I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.
She had better not wait till then, Jane," said Mr Rochester, when I read her letter to him; "if she does, she will be too late, for our honeymoon will shine our life long: its beams will only fade over your grave or mine."

How St John received the news I don’t know: he never answered the letter in which I communicated it: yet six months after he wrote to me, without, however, mentioning Mr Rochester’s name or alluding to my marriage. His letter was then calm, and though very serious, kind. He has maintained a regular, though not very frequent correspondence ever since: he hopes I am happy, and trusts I am not of those who live without God in the world, and only mind earthly things."
• the text could be segmented into narrative or discourse units;
• systematic analysis or interpretation of the text could be included in the encoding, with potentially complex alignment or linkage between the text and the analysis, or between the text and one or more translations of it;
• passages in the text could be linked to images or sound held on other media.

In the remainder of this document, we present a number of TEI-recommended ways of supporting these and other encoding requirements. These ways generally involve the application of specific TEI XML elements, selected from the full range of possibilities documented in the TEI Guidelines. Like every other TEI project, TEI Simple proposes a view of the TEI Guidelines. This document defines and documents that view.

2 The Structure of a TEI simplePrint Document

A TEI-conformant text contains (a) a TEI header (marked up as a <teiHeader> element) and (b) one or more representations of a text. These representations may be of three kinds: a transcribed text, marked up as a <text> element; a collection of digital images representing the text, marked up using a <facsimile> element; or a literal transcription of one or more documents instantiating the text, marked up using the <sourceDoc> element.

These elements are combined together to form a single <TEI> element, which must be declared within the TEI namespace, and therefore usually takes the form <TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"> ².

Some aspects of the TEI header are described in more detail in section 15. The Electronic Title Page. In what follows, we will focus chiefly on the use of the <text> element, though we describe one way of using the <facsimile> element in combination with it or alone in section 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile. We do not consider the <sourceDoc> element further, since it is mainly used in very specialised applications for which TEI simplePrint would not be appropriate.

A text may be unitary (a single work) or composite (a collection of single works, such as an anthology). In either case, the text may have optional front or back matter such as title pages, prefaces, appendixes etc. We use the term body for whatever comes between these in the source document. We discuss various kinds of composite text in section 12. Composite and Floating Texts below.

A unitary text will be encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- [ TEI Header information ] -->
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!-- [ front matter ... ] -->
    </front>
    <body>
      <!-- [ body of text ... ] -->
    </body>
    <back>
      <!-- [ back matter ... ] -->
    </back>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

²A namespace is an XML concept. Its function is to identify the vocabulary from which a group of element names are drawn, using a standard identifier resembling a web address. The namespace for TEI elements is http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0
In each of the following sections we include a short list of the TEI elements under discussion, along with a brief description, and in most cases an example of how they are used. Throughout the text, element names are linked to their detailed reference documentation, as given in the TEI Guidelines. Note that most of the examples provided by the reference documentation, and all of the links, are not specific to TEI simplePrint.

For example, here are the elements discussed so far:

`<TEI>` (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the `model.resource` class. Multiple `<TEI>` elements may be combined within a `<TEI>` (or `<teiCorpus>`) element.

`<teiHeader>` (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources.

`<text>` (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

`<facsimile>` contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

## 3 Encoding the Body

As indicated above, a unitary text is encoded by means of a `<text>` element, which may contain the following elements:

`<front>` (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

`<group>` (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

`<body>` (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

`<back>` (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. Elements specific to front and back matter are described below in section [13. Front and Back Matter](#). In this section we discuss the elements making up the body of a text. A text must always have a body.

### 3.1 Text Division Elements and Global Attributes

The body of a prose text may be just a series of paragraphs or similar blocks of text, or these may be grouped together into chapters, sections, subsections, etc. The `<div>` element is used to represent any such grouping of blocks.

`<div>` (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

- `@type [att.typed]` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

  The `type` attribute on the `<div>` element may be used to supply a conventional name for this category of text division in order to distinguish them. Typical values might be book, chapter, section, part, poem, song, etc. TEI simplePrint does not constrain the range of values that may be used here.

  A `<div>` element may itself contain further, nested `<div>`s, thus mimicking the traditional structure of a book, which can be decomposed hierarchically into units such as parts, containing chapters, containing sections, and so on. TEI texts in general conform to this simple hierarchic model.

  Here as elsewhere the `xml:id` attribute may be used to supply a unique identifier for the division, which may be used for cross references or other links to it, such as a commentary, as further discussed in section [3.7. Cross References and Links](#). It is good practice to provide
an `xml:id` attribute for every major structural unit in a text, and to derive its values in some systematic way, for example by appending a section number to a short code for the title of the work in question, as in the examples below.

The `n` attribute may be used to supply (additionally or alternatively) a short mnemonic name or number for a division, or any other element. If a conventional form of reference or abbreviation for the parts of a work already exists (such as the book/chapter/verse pattern of Biblical citations), the `n` attribute is the place to record it; unlike the identifier supplied by the `xml:id` attribute, it does not need to be unique.

The `xml:lang` attribute may be used to specify the language of the division. Languages are identified by an internationally defined code, as further discussed in section 3.5.3. Foreign Words or Expressions below.

The `rendition` attribute may be used to supply information about the rendition (appearance) of a division, or any other element, as further discussed in section 3.5. Marking Highlighted Phrases below. Note that this attribute is used to describe the appearance of the source text, rather than the appearance of any intended output when the encoded text is displayed. The two may of course be similar, or identical, but the TEI does not assume or require this.

These four attributes, `xml:id`, `n`, `xml:lang`, and `rendition` are so widely useful that they are allowed on any element in any TEI schema: they are called global attributes. Other attributes defined in the TEI simplePrint schema are discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

As noted above, the value of every `xml:id` attribute must be unique within a document. One simple way of ensuring this is to make it reflect the hierarchic structure of the document. For example, Smith’s *Wealth of Nations* as first published consists of five books, each of which is divided into chapters, while some chapters are further subdivided into parts. We might define `xml:id` values for this structure as follows:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="WN1" n="I" type="book">
    <div xml:id="WN101" n="I.1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN102" n="I.2" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="WN110" n="I.10" type="chapter">
      <div xml:id="WN1101" n="I.10.1" type="part">
        <!-- ... -->
      </div>
      <div xml:id="WN1102" n="I.10.2" type="part">
        <!-- ... -->
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="WN2" n="II" type="book">
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</body>
```

A different numbering scheme may be used for `xml:id` and `n` attributes: this is often useful where a canonical reference scheme is used which does not tally with the structure of the work. For example, in a novel divided into books each containing chapters, where the chapters are
numbered sequentially through the whole work, rather than within each book, one might use a scheme such as the following:

```xml
<body>
  <div xml:id="TS01" n="1" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS011" n="1" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS012" n="2" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
  <div xml:id="TS02" n="2" type="volume">
    <div xml:id="TS021" n="3" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
    <div xml:id="TS022" n="4" type="chapter">
      <!-- ... -->
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

Here the work has two volumes, each containing two chapters. The chapters are numbered conventionally 1 to 4, but the `xml:id` values specified allow them to be regarded additionally as if they were numbered 1.1, 1.2, 2.1, 2.2.

### 3.2 Headings and Closings

Every `<div>` may have a title or heading at its start, and (less commonly) a trailer such as End of Chapter 1 at its end. The following elements may be used to transcribe them:

- `<head>` (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.
- `<trailer>` contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

Some other elements which may be found at the beginning or ending of text divisions are discussed below in section 13.1.2. Prefatory Matter.

Whether or not headings and trailers are included in a transcription is a matter for the individual transcriber to decide. Where a heading is completely regular (for example Chapter 1) or may be automatically constructed from attribute values (e.g. `<div type="chapter" n="1">`), it may be omitted; where it contains otherwise unrecoverable text it should always be included. For example, the start of Hardy’s *Under the Greenwood Tree* might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<div xml:id="UGT1" n="Winter" type="part">
  <div xml:id="UGT101" n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>Mellstock-Lane</head>
    <p>To dwellers in a wood almost every species of tree ... </p>
  </div>
</div>
```

### 3.3 Textual Components

In prose texts such as the Brontë example above, the divisions are generally composed of paragraphs, represented as `<p>` elements, though in some circumstances it may be preferred to use the anonymous block element `<ab>`. In poetic or dramatic texts different elements are used, representing stanzas and verse lines in the first case, and individual speeches or stage directions in the second:

- `<p>` (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.
3.3 Textual Components

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

We discuss each of these kinds of component separately below.

3.3.1 Verse

Here, for example, is the start of a poetic text in which verse lines and stanzas are tagged:

<lg n="I">
    <l>I Sing the progress of a deathlesse soule,</l>
    <l>Whom Fate, with God made, but doth not controule,</l>
    <!-- ... -->
    <l>A worke t'out weare Seths pillars, bricke and stone,</l>
    <l>And (holy writs excepted) made to yeeld to none,</l>
</lg>

Note that the <l> element marks verse lines, not typographic lines: as elsewhere the original lineation of the source text is not therefore preserved by this encoding. The <lb> element described in section 3.4, Page and Line Numbers might additionally be used to mark typographic lines if so desired.

In a poetic text it may also be considered useful to identify the rhymes, for which the following element may be used:

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line.

@label provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

The following example shows how this element might be used both to identify rhyming words or word parts and to assign each rhyme to a part of a rhyming pattern by means of its label attribute. The rhyming pattern here is specified by the rhyme attribute supplied on the <lg> representing the stanza within which the pattern operates:

<lg rhyme="AABCCBBA">
    <l>The sunlight on the <rhyme label="A">garden</rhyme></l>
    <l>Harden</l>
    <rhyme label="A">Harden</rhyme>s and grows <rhyme label="B">cold</rhyme>,</l>
    <l>We cannot cage the <rhyme label="C">minute</rhyme></l>
    <l>Wi</l>
    <rhyme label="C">thin it</rhyme>s nets of <rhyme label="B">gold</rhyme></l>
    <l>When all is <rhyme label="B">told</rhyme></l>
    <l>We cannot beg for <rhyme label="A">pardon</rhyme>.</l>
</lg>
The *rhyme* attribute may be used independently of the `<rhyme>` element, or in combination with it, as above.

### 3.3.2 Drama

A dramatic text contains speeches, which may be in prose or verse, and will also contain stage directions. The `<sp>` element is used to represent each identified speech. It contains an optional speaker indication, marked with the `<speaker>` element, which can be followed by one or more `<l>` or `<p>` elements, depending on whether the speech is considered to be in prose or in verse. Stage directions, whether within or between speeches, are marked using the `<stage>` element.

For example:

```xml
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull on your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>You want me to pull off my trousers?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Pull *on* your trousers.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>
    <stage>(realizing his trousers are down)</stage>. True
  </p>
</sp>
<stage>He pulls up his trousers</stage>
<sp>
  <speaker>Vladimir</speaker>
  <p>Well? Shall we go?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Estragon</speaker>
  <p>Yes, let's go.</p>
</sp>
<stage>They do not move</stage>
```

In a verse drama, it is quite common to find that verse lines are split between speakers. The easiest way of encoding this is to use the *part* attribute to indicate that the lines so fragmented are incomplete:

```xml
<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stage rendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at several doors</stage>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Franci</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
  </div>
</div>
```
The value of the `part` attribute may indicate just that the element bearing is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect rather than a complete verse line (`part="Y"`); alternatively it may indicate whether this is an initial (I), medial (M) or F (final) fragment.

The same mechanism may be applied to stanzas which are divided between two speakers:

```xml
<sp>First voice</sp>
<lg type="stanza" part="I">
<l>But why drives on that ship so fast</l>
<l>Withouten wave or wind</l>
</lg>
</sp>
<sp>Second Voice</sp>
<lg type="stanza" part="F">
<l>The air is cut away before</l>
<l>And closes from behind</l>
</lg>
</sp>
```

The `<sp>` element can also be used for dialogue presented in a prose work as if it were drama, as in the next example, which also demonstrates the use of the `who` attribute to bear a code identifying the speaker of the piece of dialogue concerned:

```xml
<sp who="#OPI">
<speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
<p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp who="#GRM">
<speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
<p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp who="#OPI">
<speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
```
<p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place....</p>
<p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear.</p>
</div>

Here the <code>who</code> attribute values (#OPI etc.) are links, pointing to items in a list of the characters in the novel. In the case of a play, this list of characters might appear in the original source as a cast list or dramatic personae, which might be marked up using the <code>&lt;castList&gt;</code> element described in section 13.2.2. <em>Specialized Front and Back Matter</em> below. Such a list would not, of course, be appropriate to provide descriptive information about each character, much of which does not appear in the original source. Instead a <code>&lt;particDesc&gt;</code> (participant description) element should be provided in the TEI header, as further discussed in section 15.3. <em>The Profile Description</em> below.

### 3.3.3 Other Kinds of Text Block

As mentioned above, the <code>&lt;ab&gt;</code> element may also be used in preference to the <code>&lt;p&gt;</code> element. It should be used for blocks of text which are not clearly paragraphs, verse lines, or dramatic speeches. Typical examples include the canonical verses of the Bible, and the textual blocks of other ancient documents which predate the invention of the paragraph, such as Greek inscriptions or Egyptian hieroglyphs. The element is also useful as a means of encoding more specialized kinds of textual block, such as the question and answer structure of a catechism, or the highly formalized substructure of a legal document (if <code>&lt;div&gt;</code> is not considered appropriate for these). In more modern documents, it can be used to encode semi-organized or fragmentary materials such as an artist’s notebook or work in progress; or to faithfully capture the substructure of a file produced by an OCR system.

### 3.4 Page and Line Numbers

Page and line breaks etc. may be marked with the following elements:

- <code>&lt;pb&gt;</code> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.
- <code>&lt;lb&gt;</code> (line beginning) marks the beginning of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.
- <code>&lt;cb&gt;</code> (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page.
- <code>&lt;milestone&gt;</code> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.
- <code>&lt;fw&gt;</code> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page.

The <code>&lt;pb&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;lb&gt;</code>, and <code>&lt;cb&gt;</code> elements are special cases of a general class of elements known as milestones because they mark reference points within a text. The generic <code>&lt;milestone&gt;</code> element can mark any kind of reference point: for example, a column break, the start of a new kind of section not otherwise tagged, a change of author or style, or in general any significant change in the text not enclosed by an XML element. Unlike other elements, milestone elements do not enclose a piece of text and make an assertion about it; instead they indicate a point in the text where something changes, as indicated by a change in the values of the milestone’s attributes <code>unit</code>, which indicates the something concerned, and <code>n</code> which indicates the new value.

The <code>&lt;pb&gt;</code>, <code>&lt;lb&gt;</code>, and <code>&lt;cb&gt;</code> elements are shortcuts or <em>syntactic sugar</em> for <code>&lt;milestone unit="page"/&gt;</code> <code>&lt;milestone unit="line"/&gt;</code> and <code>&lt;milestone unit="column"/&gt;</code> respectively.
When working from a paginated original, it is often useful to record its pagination, whether to simplify later proof-reading, or to align the transcribed text with a set of page images, as further discussed below.

Because `<pb>` and other milestone elements are empty, they may be placed freely within or between other elements. However, it is recommended practice always to put them at the beginning of whatever unit it is that their presence implies, and not to nest them within elements contained by that unit. For example, in the following example a page break occurs between two lines of a poem:

```xml
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<pb n="13"/>
<l>Its fleece was white as snow</l>
```

The `<pb>` element should be placed ahead of all the text encoded on the 13th page. Contrast this with the following less accurate encoding:

```xml
<l>Mary had a little lamb</l>
<l>
<pb n="13"/>Its fleece was white as snow
</l>
```

This is less accurate because it implies that the second verse line actually begins before the page break.

Similar considerations apply to line breaks (`<lb>`), though these are less frequently considered useful when encoding modern printed textual sources. When transcribing manuscripts or early printed books, however, it is often helpful to retain them in an encoding, if only to facilitate alignment of transcription and original. Like `<pb>`, the `<lb>` element should appear before the text of the line whose start it signals.

If features such as pagination or lineation are marked for more than one edition, the edition in question may be specified by the `ed` attribute. For example, in the following passage we indicate where the page breaks occur in two different editions (ED1 and ED2):

```xml
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly. Diana announced that she would <pb ed="ED2" n="485"/> just give me time to get over the honeymoon, and then she would come and see me.</p>
```

When transcribing from a paginated source, the encoder must decide whether to suppress such features as running titles, page signatures, catch words etc., to replace them by a simplified representation using the `<pb>` element, perhaps using the `n` attribute to preserve some of the information, or to preserve them entirely using the `<fw>` element. The latter strategy is appropriate in encodings which aim to retain as much information as possible about the original typography; it will however make more complex the processing of the source for other purposes, as in the following example:

```xml
<l>He also fix'd the wandering QUEEN OF NIGHT,</l>
<fw type="sig">Ii 2</fw>
<fw type="catch">Whether</fw>
<pb n="244"/>
<l>Whether she wanes into a scanty orb...</l>
<!-- Thomson, Seasons, 1730-->
The `<pb>` element is also used to align parts of a transcription with a digital image of the page concerned. This may be done in a very simple but inflexible way by using the `facs` attribute to point to each page image concerned:

```html
<p>I wrote to Moor House and to Cambridge immediately, to say what I had done: fully explaining also why I had thus acted. Diana and <pb ed="ED1" n="475" facs="edip475.png"/> Mary approved the step unreservedly... </p>
```

The `facs` attribute can supply (as here) a filename, or any other form of URI, if for example the page image is stored remotely. One drawback of this simplistic approach is that there must be exactly one image file per page of text. It is not therefore suitable in the case where the available page images represent double page spreads, or where there are multiple images of the same page (for example at different resolutions).

A more powerful approach, discussed in section 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile below, is to use the `<facsimile>` element to define the organisation of the set of images representing the text, and then use the `facs` attribute to point to individual components of that representation.

3.5 Marking Highlighted Phrases

3.5.1 Changes of Typeface, etc.

Highlighted words or phrases are those made visibly different from the rest of the text, typically by a change of type font, handwriting style, ink colour etc., which is intended to draw the reader’s attention to some associated change.

The global `rendition` attribute can be attached to any element, and used wherever necessary to specify details of the highlighting used for it in the source. For example, a heading rendered in bold might be tagged `<head rendition="simple:bold">`, and one in italic `<head rendition="simple:italic">`.

The values used for the `rendition` attribute point to definitions provided for the formatting concerned. These definitions are typically provided by a `<rendition>` element in the document’s header, as further discussed in section 15.2.3. Tagging Declaration.

It is not always possible or desirable to interpret the reasons for such changes of rendering in a text. In such cases, the element `<hi>` may be used to mark a sequence of highlighted text without making any claim as to its status.

`<hi>` (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

In the following example, the use of a distinct typeface for the subheading and for the included name are recorded but not interpreted:

```html
<hi rendition="simple:blackletter">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rendition="simple:italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
</p>
```

Alternatively, where the cause for the highlighting can be identified with confidence, a number of other, more specific, elements are available.

`<foreign>` (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

`<label>` (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

`<title>` (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
Some features (notably quotations, titles, and foreign words) may be found in a text either marked by highlighting, or with quotation marks. In either case, the element `<q>` (as discussed in the following section) should be used. Again, the global `rendition` attribute can be used to record details of the highlighting used in the source if this is thought useful.

As an example of the elements defined here, consider the following sentence: On the one hand the *Nibelungenlied* is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the *romans d’antiquité*, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, and the German adaptations of these works by Heinrich van Veldeke, Hartmann von Aue, and Wolfram von Eschenbach. Interpreting the role of the highlighting, the sentence might be encoded as follows:

```
<p>On the one hand the <title>Nibelungenlied</title> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <foreign>romans d’antiquité</foreign>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

Describing only the appearance of the original, it might be encoded like this:

```
<p>On the one hand the <hi rendition="simple:italic">Nibelungenlied</hi> is associated with the new rise of romance of twelfth-century France, the <hi rendition="simple:italic">romans d’antiquité</hi>, the romances of Chrétien de Troyes, ...</p>
```

### 3.5.2 Quotations and Related Features

Like changes of typeface, quotation marks are conventionally used to denote several different features within a text, of which the most frequent is quotation, though many other features are possible. The full TEI Guidelines provide additional elements such as `<mentioned>` or `<said>` to distinguish some of these features, but these more specialised elements are not included in TEI simplePrint. In TEI Simple however, we use the `<quote>` element for quotation only, and the `<q>` element for all other material found within quotation marks in the text.

`<q>` (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

`<quote>` (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

Here is a simple example of a quotation:

```
<p>Few dictionary makers are likely to forget Dr. Johnson’s description of the lexicographer as <quote>a harmless drudge.</quote></p>
```

As elsewhere, the way that a citation or quotation was printed (for example, *in-line* or set off as a *display* or *block quotation*), may be represented using the `rendition` attribute. This may also be used to indicate the kind of quotation marks used.

Direct speech interrupted by a narrator can be represented simply by ending the `<q>` element and beginning it again after the interruption, as in the following example:
Who-e debel you?</p> — he at last said — <q>you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.

If it is important to convey the idea that the two <q> elements together make up a single speech, the linking attributes next and prev may be used, as described in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

Direct speech may be accompanied by a reference to the source or speaker, using the who attribute, whether or not this is explicit in the text, as in the following example:

Spaulding, he came down into the office just this day eight weeks with this very paper in his hand, and he says:—<q who="#Spaulding">I wish to the Lord, Mr. Wilson, that I was a red-headed man.</q>

This example also demonstrates how quotations may be embedded within other quotations: one speaker (Wilson) quotes another speaker (Spaulding).

The creator of the electronic text must decide whether quotation marks are replaced by the tags or whether the tags are added and the quotation marks kept. If the quotation marks are removed from the text, the rendition attribute may be used to record the way in which they were rendered in the copy text.

3.5.3 Foreign Words or Expressions

Words, phrases, or longer stretches of text that are not in the main language of the texts may be tagged as such in one of two ways. The global xml:lang attribute may be attached to any element to show that it uses some other language than that of the surrounding text. Where there is no applicable element, the element <foreign> may be used, again using the xml:lang attribute. For example:

John has real <foreign xml:lang="fr">savoir-faire</foreign>.

Have you read <title xml:lang="de">Die Dreigroschenoper</title>?

As these examples show, the <foreign> element should not be used to tag foreign words if some other more specific element such as <title>, or <div> applies.

The value of the xml:lang attribute on an element applies hierarchically to everything contained by that element, unless overridden:

Here we specify that the whole <div> element uses the language with the coded identifier la i.e., Latin. Since it is contained by that <div> there is no need to supply this information again for the first <s> element. The second <s> element however overrides this value, and indicates that its content is in English (the language with identifier en). The third <s> element is again in Latin.
The codes used to identify languages, supplied on the xml:lang attribute, are defined by an international standard, as further explained in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines. Some simple example codes for a few languages are given here:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>zh</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>en</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enm</td>
<td>Middle English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr</td>
<td>French</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>German</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grc</td>
<td>Ancient Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ja</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>la</td>
<td>Latin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sa</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.6 Notes

A note is any additional comment found in a text, marked in some way as being out of the main textual stream. A note is always attached to some part of the text, implicitly or explicitly: we call this its target, or its point of attachment. The element `<note>` should be used to mark any kind of note whether it appears as a separate block of text in the main text area, at the foot of the page, at the end of the chapter or volume, in the margin, or in some other place. `<note>` (note) contains a note or annotation.

Notes may be in a different hand or typeface, may be authorial or editorial, and may have been added later. The attributes `type` and `resp` can be used to distinguish between different kinds of notes or identify their authors.

In a printed or written text, the point of attachment for a note is typically represented by a siglum such as an alphanumerical or other character, often in superscripted form. When encoding such a text, it is conventional to replace this siglum by a note element containing the annotation itself, as in the following example:

```xml
<p>...some text <note xml:id="n6">a note about some text</note> .... </p>
```

An alternative approach is to encode the point of attachment wherever it appears in the text, using for example the `<ref>` element discussed in the next section, and to place the `<note>` element anywhere convenient. The two can then be associated by using the `target` attribute on the `<ref>` element to point to the `<note>` element, as in the following example, in which the superscripted 7 indicating the point of attachment has been retained as part of the encoding:

```xml
<p>...some text <ref target="#n7" rendition="simple:superscript">7</ref> .... <note xml:id="n7">a note about some text</note> </p>
```

It may however be problematic to determine the precise position of the point of attachment, particularly in the case of marginal notes. A marginal note may also be hard to distinguish from a label or subheading which introduces the text with which it is associated. Where the purpose of the note is clearly to label the associated text, rather than to comment on it, the element `<label>` may be preferable. Where it is clearly a subheading attached to a distinct subdivision, it may be preferable to start a new element `<div>` and encode the subheading as a `<head>`.

---

3 The relevant Internet standard is Best Current Practice 47 (http://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). The authoritative list of registered subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.
Note however that a `<head>` cannot be inserted anywhere except at the beginning of a `<div>`.
And where (as in some Early Modern English plays) marginal annotation is systematically used to identify speakers, it may be better to represent these using the `<speaker>` element introduced above. In cases of doubt, the encoder should decide on a clear policy and preferably document it for the use of others.

### 3.7 Cross References and Links

Any kind of cross reference or link found at one point in a text which points to another part of the same or another document may be encoded using the `<ref>` element discussed in this section. Implicit links (such as the association between two parallel texts, or that between a text and its interpretation) may be encoded using the linking attributes discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking.

#### 3.7.1 Simple Cross References

`<ref>` (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

Usually, the presence of a cross-reference or link will be indicated by some text or symbol in the source being encoded, which will then become the content of the `<ref>` element. Occasionally, however, and frequently in the case of a born digital document, the exact form and appearance of the cross reference text will be determined dynamically by the software processing the document. In such cases, the `<ref>` element will have no content, and serve simply to mark a point from which a link is to be made, along with the target of the link.

The following two forms, for example, are logically equivalent:

See especially `<ref target="#SEC12">section 12 on page 34</ref>`.

See especially `<ref target="#SEC12"></ref>`.

In both cases, there is a cross reference from the position in the source document immediately following the word *especially* to whatever element in the encoded document has the identifier SEC12. In the first case, the encoder has supplied the original form of the cross reference section 12 on page 34; in the second, the task of generating an appropriate form of cross reference has been left to the formatting software. Perhaps the pagination and section numbers of the document in question are not yet determined; perhaps the cross reference should be replaced by a big red button. In either case, however, the value of the `target` attribute must be the identifier of some other element within the current document. Since the passage or phrase being pointed at must bear an identifier, it must be an element of some kind. In the following example, the cross reference is to a `<div>` element:

```
... see especially `<ref target="#SEC12"></ref>`.

...<div xml:id="SEC12">
  <head>Concerning Identifiers</head>
</div>
```

Because the `xml:id` attribute is global, any element in a TEI document may be pointed to in this way. In the following example, a paragraph has been given an identifier so that it may be pointed at:
Sometimes the target of a cross reference does not correspond with any particular feature of a text, and so may not be tagged as an element of some kind. If the desired target is simply a point in the current document, the easiest way to mark it is by introducing an `<anchor>` element at the appropriate spot. If the target is some sequence of words not otherwise tagged, the `<seg>` element may be used to mark them. These two elements are described as follows:

**<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

**<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

In the following example, `<ref>` elements have been used to represent points in this text which are to be linked in some way to other parts of it; in the first case to a point, and in the second, to a sequence of words:

Returning to `<ref target="#ABCD">the point where I dozed off</ref>`, I noticed that `<ref target="#EFGH">three words</ref>` had been circled in red by a previous reader.

This encoding requires that elements with the specified identifiers (ABCD and EFGH in this example) are to be found somewhere else in the current document. Assuming that no element already exists to carry these identifiers, the `<anchor>` and `<seg>` elements may be used:

```xml
.... <anchor type="bookmark" xml:id="ABCD"/> .... ....<seg type="target" xml:id="EFGH"> ...
```

The `type` attribute should be used (as above) to distinguish amongst different purposes for which these general purpose elements might be used in a text. Some other uses are discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking below.

### 3.7.2 Pointing to other documents

So far, we have shown how the `<ref>` element may be used for cross-references or links whose targets occur within the same document as their source. The element may also be used to refer to elements in any other XML document or resource, such as a document on the web, or a database component. This is possible because the value of the `target` attribute may be any valid Uniform Resource Identifier (URI).

A URI may refer to a web page or just a part of one, for example `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml#SEC2`. The hash sign indicates that what follows it is the identifier of an element to be located within the XML document identified by what precedes it: this example will therefore locate an element which has an `xml:id` attribute value of SEC2 within the document retrieved from `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`. In the examples we have discussed so far, the part to the left of the sharp sign has been omitted: this is understood to mean that the referenced element is to be located within the current document.

It is also possible to define an abbreviated form of the URI, using a predefined prefix separated from the rest of the code by a colon, as for example cesr:SEC2. This is known as a private URI.

---

4A full definition of this term, defined by the W3C (the consortium which manages the development and maintenance of the World Wide Web), is beyond the scope of this tutorial: however, the most frequently encountered version of a URI is the familiar URL used to indicate a web page, such as `http://www.tei-c.org/index.xml`
since the prefix is not standardized (except that the prefix xml: is reserved for use by XML itself). A `<prefixDef>` element should be supplied within the TEI header specifying how the prefix (here cesr) should be translated to give a full URL for the link. This is particularly useful if a document contains many references to an external document such as an authority file.

Parts of an XML document can be specified by means of other more sophisticated mechanisms using a language called Xpointer, also defined by the W3C. This is useful when, for example, the elements to be linked to do not bear identifiers. Further information about this and other forms of link addressing is provided in [chapter 16 of the TEI Guidelines](#) but is beyond the scope of the present document.

3.7.3 Special Kinds of Linking

The following special purpose linking attributes are defined for every element in the TEI simplePrint schema:

- **ana** links an element with its interpretation.
- **corresp** links an element with one or more other corresponding elements.
- **next** links an element to the next element in an aggregate.
- **prev** links an element to the previous element in an aggregate.

The `ana` (analysis) attribute is intended for use where a set of abstract analyses or interpretations have been defined somewhere within a document, as further discussed in section 10. Analysis. For example, a linguistic analysis of the sentence John loves Nancy might be encoded as follows:

```xml
<seg type="sentence" ana="#SVO">
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">John</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#VVI">loves</seg>
  <seg type="lex" ana="#NP1">Nancy</seg>
</seg>
```

This encoding implies the existence elsewhere in the document of elements with identifiers SVO, NP1, and VV1 where the significance of these particular codes is explained. Note the use of the `<seg>` element to mark particular components of the analysis, distinguished by the `type` attribute.

The `corresp` (corresponding) attribute provides a simple way of representing some form of correspondence between two elements in a text. For example, in a multilingual text, it may be used to link translation equivalents, as in the following example:

```xml
<seg xml:lang="fr" xml:id="FR1" corresp="#EN1">Jean aime Nancy</seg>
<seg xml:lang="en" xml:id="EN1" corresp="#FR1">John loves Nancy</seg>
```

The same mechanism may be used for a variety of purposes. In the following example, it has been used to represent the correspondences between the show and Shirley, and between NBC and the network:

```xml
<p>
  <title xml:id="shirley">Shirley</title>, which made its Friday night debut only a month ago, was not listed on
</p>
NBC's new schedule, although the network says the show still is being considered.

The next and prev attributes provide a simple way of linking together the components of a discontinuous element, as in the following example:

```
<q xml:id="Q1a" next="#Q1b">Who-debel you?</q> — he at last said — <q xml:id="Q1b" prev="#Q1a">you no speak-e, damme, I kill-e.</q> And so saying, the lighted tomahawk began flourishing about me in the dark.
```

## 4 Editorial Interventions

The process of encoding an electronic text has much in common with the process of editing a manuscript or other text for printed publication. In either case a conscientious editor may wish to record both the original state of the source and any editorial correction or other change made in it. The elements discussed in this and the next section provide some facilities for meeting these needs.

### 4.1 Correction and Normalization

The following elements may be used to mark corrections, that is editorial changes introduced where the editor believes the original to be erroneous:

- `<corr>` (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.
- `<sic>` (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

The following elements may be used to mark normalization, that is editorial changes introduced for the sake of consistency or modernization of a text:

- `<orig>` (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.
- `<reg>` (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

Consider, for example, the following famous passage as it appears in the first quarto printing of Shakespeare's *Henry V*: in particular the phrase we might transcribe directly as

*Figure 1: Detail from *Henry V*, first quarto (1600)*
... for his Nose was as sharpe as a Pen, and a Table of greene fields

A modern editor might wish to make a number of interventions here, specifically to modernize (or normalize) the Elizabethan spellings of a’ and sharpe for he and sharp respectively. They might also want to emend table to babbl’d, following an editorial tradition that goes back to the 18th century Shakespearian scholar Lewis Theobald. The following encoding would then be appropriate:

... for his Nose was as <reg>sharp</reg> as a Pen and
<reg>he</reg>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr> of green fields

A more conservative or source-oriented editor, however, might want to retain the original, but at the same time signal that some of the readings it contains are in some sense anomalous:

... for his Nose was as <orig>sharpe</orig> as a Pen, and
<orig>a</orig>
<sic>Table</sic> of green fields

Finally, a modern digital editor may decide to combine both possibilities in a single composite text, using the <choice> element.

<choice> (choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. This allows an editor to indicate where alternative encodings are possible:

... for his Nose was as <choice>
<orig>sharpe</orig>
<reg>sharp</reg>
</choice> as a Pen, and
<choice>
<orig>a</orig>
<reg>he</reg>
</choice>
<choice>
<corr resp="#Theobald">babbl'd</corr>
<sic>Table</sic>
</choice> of green fields

4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

In addition to correcting or normalizing words and phrases, editors and transcribers may also supply missing material, omit material, or transcribe material deleted or crossed out in the source. In addition, some material may be particularly hard to transcribe because it is hard to make out on the page. The following elements may be used to record such phenomena:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.
<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.
4.2 Omissions, Deletions, and Additions

<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

<supplied> (supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

These elements may be used to record changes made by an editor, by the transcriber, or (in manuscript material) by the author or scribe. For example, if the source for an electronic text read The following elements are provided for simple editorial interventions. then it might be felt desirable to correct the obvious error, but at the same time to record the deletion of the superfluous second for, thus:

The following elements are provided for <del resp="#LB">for</del> simple editorial interventions.

The attribute value #LB on the resp attribute is used to point to a fuller definition (typically in a <respStmt> element) of the person or other agency responsible for correcting the duplication of for.

If the source read The following elements provided for simple editorial interventions. (i.e. if the word are had been inadvertently dropped) then the scholar identified as LB might choose to encode the corrected text as follows:

The following elements <add resp="#LB">are</add> provided for simple editorial interventions.

These elements may also be used to record the actual writing process, for example to record passages which have been deleted, added, corrected etc., whether by the author of a literary text or by a scribe copying out a manuscript. An analysis of such documentary modifications may be essential before a reading text can be presented, and is clearly of importance in the editorial process.

The example is taken from the surviving authorial manuscript of a poem by the English writer Wilfred Owen, a part of which is shown here:

Figure 2: Detail from Dulce et decorum est autograph manuscript in the English Faculty Library, Oxford University.

Owen first wrote Helping the worst amongst us, but then deleted it, adding Dragging the worst amongst us over the top. In the same way, he revised the phrase half–blind by deleting the half– and adding all above it. In the last line, he started a word beginning fif before deleting it and writing the word five–nines. We can encode all of this as follows:
And towards our distant rest began to trudge,

Helping the worst amongst us, who’d no boots

But limped on, blood–shod. All went lame; blind;

Drunk with fatigue; deaf even to the hoots

Of tired, outstripped five–nines that dropped behind.

The tags \(<\text{add}>\) and \(<\text{del}>\) elements are used to enclose passages added or deleted respectively. Additional attributes are available such as \(<\text{resp}>\) to indicate responsibility for the modification, or \(<\text{place}>\) to indicate where in the text (for example, above or below the line) the modification has been made. Where the encoder wishes to assert that the addition and deletion make up a single editorial act of substitution, these elements can be combined within a \(<\text{subst}>\) element as shown above.

A very careful examination of Owen’s second modification shows that he really did write amongt rather than amongst, presumably in error. An equally careful editor wishing to restore the missing s might use the \(<\text{supplied}>\) element to indicate that they have done so:

\(<\text{add}>\)Dragging the worst among\(<\text{supplied}>\)s\(<\text{supplied}>\)t us\(</\text{add}>\)

Here the \(<\text{resp}>\) attribute has been used to indicate that the s was not supplied by Owen but by someone else, specifically the person documented elsewhere by an element with the identifier ED.

The \(<\text{unclear}>\) element is useful where material in the source is so hard to read that the transcriber is uncertain as to whether they have done so correctly. The \(<\text{gap}>\) element by contrast should be used where the material is so illegible that the transcriber does not wish even to attempt it. The two may however be used together as in the following example:

One hundred & twenty good regulars joined \(<\text{unclear}>\)to me \(<\text{gap}>\) instantly, would aid me signally in an enterprise against Wilmington.

The \(<\text{del}>\) element marks material which is deleted in a source, but has been transcribed as part of the electronic text all the same, while \(<\text{gap}>\) marks the location of source material which is omitted from the electronic text, whether it is legible or not. A language corpus, for example, might omit long quotations in foreign languages. An \(<\text{extent}>\) attribute is available on the \(<\text{gap}>\) element to indicate how much material has been omitted. The \(<\text{desc}>\) element can be used inside the \(<\text{gap}>\) element to provide a brief characterisation of the omitted material, as in the following examples:

... An example of a list appearing in a fief ledger of \(<\text{name}>\)Koldinghus\(</\text{name}>\) is given below. It shows cash income from a sale of honey.\(</p>\)

\(<\text{gap}>\)Quotation from ledger (in Danish)\(</\text{gap}>\)
4.3 Abbreviation and their Expansion

A description of the overall structure of the account is once again ...

(The `<name>` and `<date>` elements used in this example are discussed further below.)

Language corpora (particularly those constructed before the widespread use of scanners) often systematically omit figures and mathematics:

At the bottom of your screen below the mode line is the `<hi>`minibuffer`</hi>`. This is the area where Emacs echoes the commands you enter and where you specify filenames for Emacs to find, values for search and replace, and so on. `<gap reason="graphic">`<desc>diagram of Emacs screen</desc>`</gap>`

4.3 Abbreviation and their Expansion

Like names, dates, and numbers, abbreviations may be transcribed as they stand or expanded; they may be left unmarked, or encoded using the following elements:

- `<abbr>` (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.
- `<expan>` (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

The `<abbr>` element is useful as a means of distinguishing semi-lexical items such as acronyms or jargon:

Every manufacturer of `<abbr>`3GL`</abbr>` or `<abbr>`4GL`</abbr>` languages is currently nailing on `<abbr>`OOP`</abbr>` extensions

The `type` attribute may be used to distinguish types of abbreviation by their function.

The `<expan>` element is used to mark an expansion supplied by an encoder. This element is particularly useful in the transcription of manuscript materials. For example, the character p with a bar through its descender as a conventional representation for the word per is commonly encountered in Medieval European manuscripts. An encoder may choose to expand this as follows:

`<expan>`per`</expan>`

To record both an abbreviation and its expansion, the `<choice>` element mentioned above may be used to group the abbreviated form with its proposed expansion:

`<choice>`
  `<abbr>`wt`</abbr>`
  `<expan>`with`</expan>`
`</choice>`

The elements `<expan>` and `<abbr>` should contain a full word, or the abbreviated form of a full word respectively. For a fuller discussion of abbreviations and the intricacies of representing them consult the section on [Abbreviation and Expansion](#) in the TEI Guidelines.
5 Names, Codes, and Numbers

The TEI scheme defines elements for a large number of data-like features which may appear almost anywhere within almost any kind of text. These features may be of particular interest in a range of disciplines; they all relate to objects external to the text itself, such as the names of persons and places, strings of code, formulae, or numbers and dates. These items may also pose particular problems for natural language processing (NLP) applications. The elements described here, by making such features explicit, reduce the complexity of processing texts containing them.

5.1 Names and Referring Strings

A referring string is any phrase which refers to some person, place, object, etc. A name is a referring string which contains proper nouns and honorifics only. Two elements are provided to mark such strings:

- `<rs>` (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.
- `<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

The type attribute is used to distinguish amongst (for example) names of persons, places and organizations, where this is possible:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr. Bennet</name>, </q> said his lady to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place">Netherfield Park</name> is let at last?</q>
```

It being one of the principles of the
<name type="org">Circumlocution Office</name> never, on any account
whatsoever, to give a straightforward answer, <name type="person">Mr Barnacle</name> said,
<q>Possibly.</q>

As the following example shows, the `<rs>` element may be used for a reference to a person, place, etc., which does not contain a proper noun or noun phrase:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person">Mr. Bennet</name>, </q> said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day...
```

Simply tagging something as a name is rarely enough to enable automatic processing of personal names into the canonical forms usually required for reference purposes. The name as it appears in the text may be inconsistently spelled, partial, or vague. Moreover, name prefixes such as van or de la, may or may not be included as part of the reference form of a name, depending on the language and country of origin of the bearer.

The ref attribute provides a way of linking a name with a description of the object being named, and may thus act as a normalized identifier for it. It is also very useful as a means of gathering together all references to the same individual or location scattered throughout a document:

```
<q>My dear <name type="person" ref="#BENM1">Mr. Bennet</name>, </q> said <rs type="person" ref="#BENM2">his lady</rs> to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <name type="place" ref="#NETP1">Netherfield Park</name> is let at last?</q>
```
The values used for the ref attribute here (#BENM1 etc.) are pointers; in this case indicating an element with the identifier BENM1 etc. somewhere in the current document, though any form of URI could be used. The element indicated will typically (for a person) be a <person> element, listed within a <particDesc> element, or (for a place) a <place> element, listed within a <settingDesc> element in the TEI header, as further discussed in 15.3. The Profile Description below.

This use should be distinguished from the case of the <reg> (regularization) element, which provides a means of marking the standard form of a referencing string as demonstrated below:

```xml
<name type="person" ref="#WADLM1">
  <choice>
    <orig>Walter de la Mare</orig>
    <reg>de la Mare, Walter</reg>
  </choice>
</name> was born at <name ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charlton,_London" type="place">Charlton</name>, in <name type="place">Kent</name>, in 1873.
```

5.2 Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters

The following elements may be useful when marking up sequences of text that represent mathematical expressions, chemical formulae, and the like:

- `<formula>` (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula.
- `<g>` (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character.

In many cases, a simple Unicode character suffices to represent the superscript or subscript digits and other symbols which may appear inside a mathematical formula:

```xml
<formula>E=mc²</formula>
```

In other more complex cases, the encoder may choose to use a different XML scheme (such as MathML) to encode the content of a formula, or a non-XML notation. These possibilities are not discussed further here.

The `<g>` element is useful in the case that no Unicode character exists to represent the character or glyph required. Its ref attribute can be used to point to a definition of the symbol intended, while its content (if any) represents a Unicode approximation to it:

```xml
...Thereto
<g ref="#air">[air]</g> and ...
```

The TEI header provides a number of additional elements for the definition of such non-Unicode characters, as further discussed in section [15.2.5. The character declaration] below.

The following elements are useful for stretches of code or similar formal language appearing within a text:

- `<code>` contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.
- `<email>` (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered.

This can be expressed in XML as follows:

```xml
<code>&lt;date notBefore="2016-06-23"/&gt;</code>  Contact the author at
<email>lou.burnard@gmail.com</email>
```
Note in this example that characters which have a syntactic function in XML (such as the ampersand or the angle bracket) must be represented within a TEI simplePrint document by means of an entity reference such as &lt; or &amp;.

The element &lt;ref&gt; discussed in section 3.7. Cross References and Links should be used to represent a coded reference such as a link given as a URL within a text, either as content or as an attribute value:

```xml
<p>Further discussion of &lt;ref target="http://www.tei-c.org/"&gt;the Text Encoding Initiative website&lt;/ref&gt; may be found at &lt;ref&gt;http://www.tei-c.org/&lt;/ref&gt;</p>
```

### 5.3 Dates and Times

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of times and dates:

- `<date>` (date) contains a date in any format.
- `<time>` (time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

These elements have a number of attributes which can be used to provide normalized versions of their values in various ways.

- **att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.
  - `@period` supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
  - `@when [att.datable.w3c]` supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
  - `@notBefore [att.datable.w3c]` specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
  - `@notAfter [att.datable.w3c]` specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

The `when` attribute specifies a normalized form for the date or time, using one of the standard formats defined by ISO 8601. Partial dates or times (e.g. 1990, September 1990, twelvish) can be expressed by omitting a part of the value supplied, as in the following examples:

```xml
<date when="1980-02-21">21 Feb 1980</date>
<date when="1990">1990</date>
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
<date when="--09">September</date>
<date when="2001-09-11T12:48:00">Sept 11th, 12 minutes before 9 am</date>
```

These attributes are typically used to make a date or time more easily processable, as in the following examples:

```
Given on the
<date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.&lt;/date&gt;
```
special when it’s nine below zero</l>

and <time when="15:00:00">three o’clock in the afternoon</time>

They are also useful in cases where the date concerned is uncertain or only vaguely specified:

<date period="secondEmpire">during the second empire</date>

<date notAfter="1946-12-09"
notBefore="1946-11-01">in the weeks shortly before my birth</date>

5.4 Numbers and Measurements

Like dates, both numbers and quantities can be written with either letters or digits and may therefore need to be normalized for ease of processing. Their presentation is also highly language-dependent (e.g. English 5th becomes Greek 5.; English 123,456.78 equals French 123,456,78).

The following elements are provided for the detailed encoding of numbers and quantities:

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.

@type indicates the type of numeric value.
@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

<measure> (measure) contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

@quantity [att.measurement] (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement
@unit [att.measurement] (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
@commodity [att.measurement] (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured

For example:

<num value="33">xxxiii</num>
<num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">ten percent</num>
<num type="percentage" value="10">10%</num>
<num type="ordinal" value="5">5th</num>

<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="dozen"
commodity="blooms">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
commodity="blooms">a yellow tulip</measure>
6 LISTS

6 Lists
The element <list> is used to mark any kind of list. A list is a sequence of text items, which may be numbered, bulleted, or arranged as a glossary list. Each item may be preceded by an item label (in a glossary list, this label is the term being defined):

- <list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list.
- <item> (item) contains one component of a list.
- <label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

Individual list items are tagged with <item>. The first <item> may optionally be preceded by a <head>, which gives a heading for the list. The numbering of items within the list may be omitted, indicated using the n attribute on each item, or (rarely) tagged as content using the <label> element. The following are all thus equivalent:

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

```
<list n="1">First item in list.</item>
  <item n="2">Second item in list.</item>
  <item n="3">Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

```
<list>
  <head>A short list</head>
  <label>1</label>
  <item>First item in list.</item>
  <label>2</label>
  <item>Second item in list.</item>
  <label>3</label>
  <item>Third item in list.</item>
</list>
```

The styles should not be mixed in the same list.

A simple two-column table may be treated as a glossary list, tagged <list type="gloss">. Here, each item comprises a term and a gloss, marked with <label> and <item> respectively.

```
<list type="gloss">
  <head>Vocabulary</head>
  <label xml:lang="enm">nu</label>
  <item>nu</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">lhude</label>
  <item>lhude</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">bloweth</label>
  <item>bloweth</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">blooms</label>
  <item>blooms</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">med</label>
  <item>med</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">wude</label>
  <item>wude</item>
  <label xml:lang="enm">awe</label>
  <item>awe</item>
</list>
```

```
Where the internal structure of a list item is more complex, it may be preferable to regard the list as a *table*, for which special-purpose tagging is defined in section 8. *Tables*.

Lists of whatever kind can, of course, nest within list items to any depth required. Here, for example, a glossary list contains two items, each of which is itself a simple list:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>EVIL</label>
  <item>
    <list type="simple">
      <item>I am cast upon a horrible desolate island, void of all hope of recovery.</item>
      <item>I am singled out and separated as it were from all the world to be miserable.</item>
      <item>I am divided from mankind — a solitaire; one banished from human society.</item>
    </list>
  </item>
  <label>GOOD</label>
  <item>
    <list type="simple">
      <item>But I am alive; and not drowned, as all my ship’s company were.</item>
      <item>But I am singled out, too, from all the ship’s crew, to be spared from death..</item>
      <item>But I am not starved, and perishing on a barren place, affording no sustenances....</item>
    </list>
  </item>
</list>
```

Lists of bibliographic items should be tagged using the `<listBibl>` element, described in the next section.

## 7 Bibliographic Citations

It is often useful to distinguish bibliographic citations where they occur within texts being transcribed for research, if only so that they will be properly formatted when the text is printed out. The element `<bibl>` is provided for this purpose. Where the components of a bibliographic reference are to be distinguished, the following elements may be used as appropriate. It is generally useful to distinguish at least those parts (such as the titles of articles, books, and journals) which will need special formatting. The other elements are provided for cases where particular interest attaches to such details:

- `<bibl>` (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- `<author>` (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
7 BIBLIOGRAPHIC CITATIONS

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.

<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work.

Consider, for example the following editorial note:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, Harvard Studies 5. 88ff).

This might be encoded as follows:

He was a member of Parliament for Warwickshire in 1445, and died March 14, 1470 (according to Kittredge, <bibl><author>Kittredge</author>, Harvard Studies</bibl> <title>5. 88ff</title>).

The bibliographic elements listed above are particularly useful in a born digital document which contains a bibliography encoded using the <listBibl> element. Entries in the bibliography should be given an identifier, which can then be used as the target of cross references from elsewhere in the document:

<p>Perec citing, amongst others <ref target="#MK_73">Sturm und Drang, 1973</ref>, concludes ... </p>

A <bibl> element may contain simply text, with possibly a few of its components distinguished by tagging, and much use of conventionalized punctuation, as in this example:


Alternatively, each of the components of the bibliographic reference may be clearly distinguished by tagging; in this case there is no requirement for conventionalized punctuation, since the processor will be able to generate this appropriately:

<bibl xml:id="MK73">
<author>Sturm, U.</author>
<author>Drang, F.</author>
<title xml:lang="de" level="m">Musikalische Katastrophe</title>
<pubPlace>Berlin</pubPlace>
</bibl>
The element `<bibFull>` is also provided for convenience in cases where bibliographic citations following a more sophisticated model have been used; it is permitted only in the TEI header. `<bibFull>` (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. `<listBibl>` (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. The `<listBibl>` element is used to group lists of bibliographic citations. It may contain a series of `<bibl>` or `<bibFull>` elements.

8 Tables

The following elements are provided for the description of tabular matter, commonly found in many kinds of narrative text. Note that TEI simplePrint provides no sophisticated ways of describing the detailed layout of a table beyond its organization into rows and columns. `<table>` (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. `<row>` (row) contains one row of a table. `<cell>` (cell) contains one cell of a table.

The `role` attribute may be used on either `<cell>` or `<row>` to indicate the function of a cell, or of a row of cells. Its values should be taken from the following list:

- **data** data cell
- **label** label cell
- **sum** row or column sum data
- **total** table total data

For example, Defoe uses mortality tables like the following in the *Journal of the Plague Year* to show the rise and ebb of the epidemic:

```
<p>It was indeed coming on amain, for the burials that same week were in the next adjoining parishes thus:-
<table rows="5" cols="4">
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Leonard's, Shoreditch</cell>
    <cell>64</cell>
    <cell>84</cell>
    <cell>119</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Botolph's, Bishopsgate</cell>
    <cell>65</cell>
    <cell>105</cell>
    <cell>116</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="label">St. Giles's, Cripplegate</cell>
    <cell>213</cell>
    <cell>421</cell>
    <cell>554</cell>
  </row>
</table>
```
This shutting up of houses was at first counted a very cruel and unchristian method, and the poor people so confined made bitter lamentations. ...

9 Figures and Graphics

Not all the components of a document are necessarily textual. The most straightforward text will often contain diagrams or illustrations, to say nothing of documents in which image and text are inextricably intertwined, or electronic resources in which the two are complementary.

The encoder may simply record the presence of a graphic within the text, possibly with a brief description of its content, and may also provide a link to a digitized version of the graphic, using the following elements:

- `<graphic>` (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it.
- `<figure>` (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure.
- `<figDesc>` (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it.

Any textual information accompanying the graphic, such as a heading and/or caption, may be included within the `<figure>` element itself, in a `<head>` and one or more `<p>` elements, as may any text appearing within the graphic itself. It is strongly recommended that a prose description of the image be supplied, as the content of a `<figDesc>` element, for the use of applications which are not able to render the graphic, and to render the document accessible to vision-impaired readers. (Such text is not normally considered part of the document proper.)

The simplest use for these elements is to mark the position of a graphic and provide a link to it, as in this example:

```
<figure n="412"/>
    <graphic url="images/p412fig.png" width="40%"/>
</figure>
```

This indicates that the graphic contained by the file p412fig.png appears between pages 412 and 413.

The `<graphic>` element can appear anywhere that textual content is permitted, within but not between paragraphs or headings. In the following example, the encoder has decided to treat a specific printer’s ornament as a heading:

```
<head>
    <graphic url="http://www.iath.virginia.edu/gants/Ornaments/Heads/hp-ral02.gif"/>
</head>
```

More usually, a graphic will have at least an identifying title, which may be encoded using the `<head>` element, or a number of figures may be grouped together in a particular structure, as in the following example: The `<figure>` element provides a means of wrapping one or more such elements together as a kind of graphic block. It may also include a brief description of the image:
Figure 3: *Mr Fezziwig’s Ball*: illustration by George Cruikshank from Dickens’ *A Christmas Carol* (1843)
These cases should be carefully distinguished from the case where an encoded text is complemented by a collection of digital images, maintained as a distinct resource. The `facs` attribute may be used to associate any element in an encoded text with a digital facsimile of it. In the simplest case, the `facs` attribute on the `<pb>` element may be used to supply a location for an image file corresponding with that point in the text:

```
<div>
  <pb facs="pag1.png" n="1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 is encoded here -->
  <pb facs="pag2.png" n="2"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 is encoded here -->
</div>
```

This method is only appropriate in the simple case where each digital image file `pag1.png` etc. corresponds with a single transcribed and encoded page. If multiple images are provided for each page, or more detailed alignment of image and transcription is required, for example because the image files actually represent double page spreads, more sophisticated mechanisms are needed, as further discussed in 14. Encoding a Digital Facsimile below.

## 10 Analysis

### 10.1 Orthographic Sentences

Interpretation typically ranges across the whole of a text, with no particular respect to other structural units. A useful preliminary to intensive interpretation is therefore to segment the text into discrete and identifiable units, each of which can then bear a label for use as a sort of canonical reference. To facilitate such uses, these units may not cross each other, nor nest within each other. They may conveniently be represented using the following element: 

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

As the name suggests, the `<s>` element is most commonly used (in linguistic applications at least) for marking **orthographic sentences**, that is, units defined by orthographic features such as punctuation. For example, the passage from *Jane Eyre* discussed earlier might be divided into s-units as follows:

```
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <pb n="474"/>
  <p>
    <s n="001">Reader, I married him.</s>
    <s n="002">A quiet wedding we had:</s>
    <s n="003">he and I, the parson and clerk, were alone present.</s>
    <s n="004">When we got back from church, I went into the kitchen of the manor-house, where Mary was cooking the dinner, and John cleaning the knives, and I said --</s>
  </p>
</div>
```
10.2 Words and Punctuation

Tokenization, that is, the identification of lexical or non-lexical tokens within a text, is a very common requirement for all kinds of textual analysis, and not an entirely trivial one. The decision as to whether, for example, can’t in English or du in French should be treated as one word or two is not simple. Consequently it is often useful to make explicit the preferred tokenization in a marked up text. The following elements are available for this purpose:

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.
<c> (character) represents a character.
<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark.

For example, the output from a part of speech tagger might be recorded in TEI simplePrint as follows:

```xml
<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0">dead</w>
  <pc>;</pc>
  <w ana="#TO0">to</w>
  <w ana="#VBB">begin</w>
  <w ana="#PRP">with</w>
  <pc ana="#SENT">.</pc>
</s>
```

In this example, each token in the input has been decorated with an automatically generated part of speech code, using the `ana` attribute discussed in section 3.7.3. Special Kinds of Linking above. The system has also distinguished between tokens to be treated as words (tagged `<w>`) and tokens considered to be punctuation (tagged `<pc>`). It may also sometimes be useful to distinguish tokens which consist of a single letter or character: the `<c>` element is provided for this purpose.

The `<w>` also provides for each word to be associated with a root form or lemma, either explicitly using the `lemma` attribute, or by reference, using the `lemmaRef` attribute, as in this example:

```xml
...<w ana="#VBD" lemma="be" lemmaRef="http://www.myLexicon.com/be">was</w> ...
```

10.3 General-Purpose Interpretation Elements

The `<w>` element is a specialisation of the `<seg>` element which has already been introduced for use in identifying otherwise unmarked targets of cross references and hypertext links (see
11 COMMON ATTRIBUTES

section 3.7. Cross References and Links); it can be used to distinguish any portion of text to which the encoder wishes to assign a user-specified *type* or a unique identifier; it may thus be used to tag textual features for which there is no other provision in the published TEI Guidelines.

For example, the TEI Guidelines provide no apostrophe element to mark parts of a literary text in which the narrator addresses the reader (or hearer) directly. One approach might be to regard these as instances of the `<q>` element, distinguished from others by an appropriate value for the `who` attribute. A possibly simpler, and certainly more general, solution would however be to use the `<seg>` element as follows:

```html
<div type="chapter" n="38">
  <p>
    <seg type="apostrophe">Reader, I married him.</seg> A quiet wedding we had: ...
  </p>
</div>
```

The *type* attribute on the `<seg>` element can take any value, and so can be used to distinguish phrase-level phenomena of any kind; it is good practice to record the values used and their significance in the TEI header or in the documentation of the encoding system.

11 Common Attributes

Some attributes are available on many elements, though not on all. These attributes are defined using a TEI attribute class, a concept which is discussed further in the TEI Guidelines. We list here some attribute classes which have been adapted or customized for use in TEI simplePrint.

The elements `<add>`, `<figure>`, `<fw>`, `<label>`, `<note>` and `<stage>` all take the attribute `place` to indicate whereabouts on the page they appear. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

- **att.placement** provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.
- **@place** specifies where this item is placed.
  - **above** above the line
  - **below** below the line
  - **top** at the top of the page
  - **top-right** at the top right of the page
  - **top-left** at the top left of the page
  - **top-centre** at the top center of the page
  - **bottom-right** at the bottom right of the page
  - **bottom-left** at the bottom left of the page
  - **bottom-centre** at the bottom centre of the page
  - **bottom** at the foot of the page
  - **tablebottom** underneath a table
  - **margin-right** in the right-hand margin
  - **margin** in the outer margin
margin-inner in the inner margin
margin-left in the left-hand margin
opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page
overleaf on the other side of the leaf
overstrike superimposed on top of the current context
end at the end of the volume
divend at the end of the current division
parend at the end of the current paragraph
inline within the body of the text
inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe
block formatted as an indented paragraph

The elements `<add>`, `<am>`, `<corr>`, `<date>`, `<del>`, `<ex>`, `<expan>`, `<gap>`, `<name>`, `<reg>`, `<space>`, `<subst>`, `<supplied>`, `<time>` and `<unclear>` all use the attribute `unit` to indicate the units in which the size of the feature concerned is expressed. In TEI simplePrint the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

- `@unit` names the unit used for the measurement

chars characters
lines lines
pages pages
words words

cm centimetres

mm millimetres
in inches

Very many TEI elements take the value `type` (see the specification for `att.typed` for a full list). In most cases, no constraint is placed on the possible values for this attribute. In the case of the element `<name>` however, the possible values for this attribute are limited as indicated below:

- `<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

  - `@type` characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

person person
forename forename
surname surname

personGenName generational name component
12 Composite and Floating Texts

A composite text, like a simple text, has an optional front and back matter. In between however, instead of a single body, it contains one or more discrete texts, each with its own optional front and back matter. The following elements are provided to handle composite texts of various kinds.

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes.

<teiCorpus> (TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

A typical example might be an anthology containing several distinct works, or any other kind of collection, encoded using an overall structure like this:

```xml
<TEI xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!--[ header information for the composite ]-->  
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <front>
      <!--[ front matter for the composite ]-->  
    </front>
    <group>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!--[ front matter of first text ]-->  
        </front>
        <body>
          <!--[ body of first text ]-->  
        </body>
        <back>
          <!--[ back matter of first text ]-->  
        </back>
      </text>
      <text>
        <front>
          <!--[ front matter of second text]-->  
        </front>
        <body>
          <!--[ body of second text ]-->  
        </body>
      </text>
    </group>
  </text>
</TEI>
```
A different kind of composite text occurs when one text is embedded within another, as for example in the Arabian Nights or similar collections of stories, or in other cases where one narrative is interrupted by another. The element <floatingText> may be preferred to encode such materials as the following:

The Gentleman having finish’d his Story, Galecia waited on him to the Stairs-head; and at her return, casting her Eyes on the Table, she saw lying there an old dirty rumpled Book, and found in it the following story:

IN the time of the Holy War when Christians from all parts went into the Holy Land to oppose the Turks; Amongst these there was a certain English Knight...

The King graciouslypardoned the Knight; Richard was kindly receiv’d into his Convent, and all things went on in good order: But from hence came the Proverb, We must not strike <hi>Robert</hi> for <hi>Richard</hi>.

By this time Galecia’s Maid brought up her Supper; after which she cast her Eyes again on the foresaid little Book, where she found the following Story ....

Note that there is only a single TEI header for composite texts of either kind, since the assumption is that the composite is at some level describable as a single work. However, it is also possible to define a composite of complete TEI texts, each with its own TEI header. Such a collection is known as a TEI corpus, and must itself have a TEI header:
It is also possible to create a composite of corpora – that is, one `<teiCorpus>` element may contain many nested `<teiCorpus>` elements rather than many nested `<TEI>` elements, to any depth considered necessary.

13 Front and Back Matter

13.1 Front Matter

For many purposes, particularly in older texts, the preliminary material such as title pages, prefatory epistles, etc., may provide very useful additional linguistic or social information. The TEI Guidelines provide a set of recommendations for distinguishing the textual elements most commonly encountered in front matter, which are summarized here.

13.1.1 Title Page

The start of a title page should be marked with the element `<titlePage>`. All text contained on the page should be transcribed and tagged with the appropriate element from the following list:

- `<titlePage>` (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.
- `<docTitle>` (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.
- `<titlePart>` (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.
- `<byline>` (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.
- `<docAuthor>` (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).
- `<docDate>` (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline.
- `<docImprint>` (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.
- `<epigraph>` (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page.

Typeface distinctions should be marked with the `rendition` attribute when necessary, as described above though a very detailed description of the letter spacing and sizing used in ornamental titles is not easily done. Changes of language should be marked by appropriate use of the `xml:lang` attribute or the `<foreign>` element, as necessary. Names of people, places, or organizations, may be tagged using the `<name>` element wherever they appear if no other more specific element is available.

Two example title pages follow:
13.1 Front Matter

As elsewhere, the ref attribute may be used to link a name with a canonical definition of the entity being named. For example:

```xml
<byline>
  By <docAuthor>
    <name ref="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Agnes_Strickland">Agnes Strickland</name>
  </docAuthor>
</byline>
```

13.1.2 Prefatory Matter

Major blocks of text within the front matter should be marked using `<div>` elements; the following suggested values for the `type` attribute may be used to distinguish various common types of prefatory matter:

- **preface** A foreword or preface addressed to the reader in which the author or publisher explains the content, purpose, or origin of the text.
- **dedication** A formal offering or dedication of a text to one or more persons or institutions by the author.
- **abstract** A summary of the content of a text as continuous prose.
A formal declaration of acknowledgment by the author in which persons and institutions are thanked for their part in the creation of a text.

**contents** A table of contents, specifying the structure of a work and listing its constituents. The `<list>` element should be used to mark its structure.

**frontispiece** A pictorial frontispiece, possibly including some text.

Where other kinds of prefatory matter are encountered, the encoder is at liberty to invent other values for the `type` attribute.

### 13.1.3 Liminal Elements

All text divisions, whether in front matter or elsewhere, may begin and end with one or more components which we term *liminal elements*, because they begin or end the division. A typical example is a heading or title of some kind which should be tagged using the `<head>` element; but there are many other possibilities:

- `<salute>` (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

- `<signed>` (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

- `<byline>` (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

- `<dateline>` (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

- `<argument>` (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

- `<cit>` (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

- `<imprimatur>` (imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

- `<opener>` (opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

- `<closer>` (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

- `<postscript>` contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter.

As an example, the beginning and end of the dedication to Milton’s *Comus* might be marked up as follows:

```xml
<div type="dedication">
  <head>To the Right Honourable <name>JOHN Lord Viscount BRACLY</name>, Son and Heir apparent to the Earl of Bridgewater, &c.</head>
  <salute>MY LORD,</salute>
  <p>This <hi>Poem</hi>, which receiv'd its first occasion of Birth from your Self, and others of your Noble Family .... and as in this representation your attendant <name>Thyrsis</name>, so now in all reall expression</p>
  <closer>
  <salute>Your faithfull, and most humble servant</salute>
  <signed>
    <name>H. LAWES.</name>
  </signed>
</div>
```
13.2 Back Matter

13.2.1 Structural Divisions of Back Matter

Because of variations in publishing practice, back matter can contain virtually any of the elements listed above for front matter, and the same elements should be used where this is so. Additionally, back matter may contain the following types of matter within the `<back>` element. Like the structural divisions of the body, these should be marked as `<div>` elements, and distinguished by the following suggested values of the `type` attribute:

- **appendix** An ancillary self-contained section of a work, often providing additional but in some sense extra-canonical text.

- **glossary** A list of terms associated with definition texts (glosses): this should be encoded as a `<list type="gloss">` element.

- **notes** A section in which textual or other kinds of notes are gathered together.

- **bibliogr** A list of bibliographic citations: this should be encoded as an `<listBibl>`.

- **index** Any form of pre-existing index to the work

- **colophon** A statement appearing at the end of a book describing the conditions of its physical production.

13.2.2 Specialized Front and Back Matter

TEI simplePrint also provides elements for some additional components of front or back matter which are characteristic of particular kinds of text, in particular old play texts. These often include lists of dramatis personae and notes about the setting of a play, for which the following elements are provided:

- `<castList>` (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae.

- `<castItem>` (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles.

- `<castGroup>` (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual `<castItem>` elements within a cast list.

- `<role>` (role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list.

- `<roleDesc>` (role description) describes a character’s role in a drama.

- `<actor>` contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list.

- `<set>` (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction).

Note that these elements are intended for use in marking up cast lists and setting notes as they appear in a source document. They are not intended for use when marking up definitive lists of the different roles identified in a play, except in so far as that may have been their original purpose.

The following example shows one way of encoding the last part of Shakespeare’s *Tempest*, as printed in the first folio:

```xml
<castList>
  <castItem>
    <role>Prospero</role>
    <roleDesc>Master of the island</roleDesc>
  </castItem>
  ...
</castList>
```
14 Encoding a Digital Facsimile

The following elements may be used to encode a text represented by a collection of digital images, either alone or in conjunction with a textual transcription.

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text.

<surface> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them.

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element.

As mentioned in section 9. Figures and Graphics above, a TEI simplePrint document may reference a set of page images, alone, or in combination with a transcription. For ease of management, it is strongly recommended that the <graphic> elements representing those page images be grouped together within a <facsimile> element, as in the following example:

```xml
<facsimile>
  <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="pg1"/>
  <graphic url="page2.png" xml:id="pg2"/>
</facsimile>
```

If a transcription is supplied in addition, the xml:id values can be used to align the page breaks within it with the relevant image, rather than using the URL given on the <graphic> element.

```xml
<text>
  <!-- text contained on page 1 -->
  <pb facs="#pg1"/>
  <!-- text contained on page 2 -->
  <pb facs="#pg2"/>
</text>
```
The `<surface>` element is useful in two situations: when it is desired to group different images of the same page, for example of different resolutions; and when it is desired to align parts of a page image with parts of a transcription. The `<zone>` element is used to define (and hence provide an identifier for) the location of a part of an image with reference to the surface on which it appears.

In this example, a thumbnail and a high resolution image are associated with the same surface:

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface>
    <graphic xml:id="page1T" url="thumbs/page1.png"/>
    <graphic xml:id="page1" url="page1.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

In this example, the `<head>` element in the transcription is aligned with the top half of a square image:

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="4" lry="4">
    <graphic url="page1.png" xml:id="page1"/>
    <zone xml:id="topHalfP1" ulx="1" uly="1" lrx="2" lry="4"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

A more detailed explanation of the use of these attributes and other associated elements is given in the full TEI Guidelines.

15 The Electronic Title Page

Every TEI text has a header which provides information analogous to that provided by the title page of printed text. The header is introduced by the element `<teiHeader>` and has four major parts:

- `<fileDesc>` (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.
- `<encodingDesc>` (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.
- `<profileDesc>` (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.
- `<revisionDesc>` (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

A corpus or collection of texts with many shared characteristics may have one header for the corpus and individual headers for each component of the corpus. In this case the `type` attribute indicates the type of header. `<teiHeader type="corpus">` introduces the header for corpus-level information.

Some of the header elements contain running prose which consists of one or more `<p>`s. Others are grouped:
Elements whose names end in *Stmt* (for statement) usually enclose a group of elements recording some structured information.

Elements whose names end in *Decl* (for declaration) enclose information about specific encoding practices.

Elements whose names end in *Desc* (for description) contain a prose description.

### 15.1 The File Description

The `<fileDesc>` element is mandatory. It contains a full bibliographic description of the file with the following elements:

- `<titleStmt>` (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content.
- `<editionStmt>` (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.
- `<extent>` (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.
- `<publicationStmt>` (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.
- `<seriesStmt>` (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.
- `<notesStmt>` (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.
- `<sourceDesc>` (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence.

A minimal TEI header has the following structure:

```xml
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <!-- [ bibliographic description of the digital resource ] -->
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <!-- [ information about how the resource is distributed ] -->
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
      <!-- [ information about the sources from which the digital resource is derived ] -->
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

### 15.1.1 The Title Statement

The following elements can be used in the `<titleStmt>` to provide information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content:

- `<title>` (title) contains a title for any kind of work.
- `<author>` (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.
- `<respStmt>` (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized
elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

The title of a digital resource derived from a non-digital original may be similar to that of its source but should be distinct from it, for example: [title of source]: TEI XML edition or A machine readable version of: [title of source]

The generic <respStmt> element may be used to indicate any kind of responsibility, ranging from a funder or sponsor to an illustrator or editor. It contains the following subcomponents:
<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work.

Example:

```
<titleStmt>
<title>Two stories by Edgar Allen Poe</title>
<author>Poe, Edgar Allen (1809-1849)</author>
<respStmt>
<resp>TEI encoding</resp>
<name>James D. Benson</name>
</respStmt>
<respStmt>
<resp>Funding</resp>
<name>Getty Foundation</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

15.1.2 The Edition Statement

The <editionStmt> groups information relating to one edition of the digital resource (where edition is used as elsewhere in bibliography), and may include the following elements:

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work.

Example:

```
<editionStmt>
<edition n="U2">Third draft, substantially revised</edition>
<date>1987</date>
</editionStmt>
```

Determining exactly what constitutes a new edition of an electronic text is left to the encoder.

15.1.3 The Extent Statement

The <extent> statement describes the approximate size of the digital resource.

Example:

```
<extent>15 Mb</extent>
```

15.1.4 The Publication Statement

The <publicationStmt> is mandatory. It may contain a simple prose description or groups of the elements described below:
<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<distributor> (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

At least one of these elements must be present, unless the entire publication statement is in prose. The following elements may occur within them:

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<address> (address) contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.

<date> (date) contains a date in any format.

Example:

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Victoria, BC</pubPlace>
  <date>2011</date>
  <availability status="restricted">
    <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/">Distributed under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 Unported License</licence>
  </availability>
</publicationStmt>

15.1.5 Series and Notes Statements

The <seriesStmt> element groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. It may contain <title>, <idno>, or <respStmt> elements.

The <notesStmt>, if used, contains one or more <note> elements which contain a note or annotation. Some information found in the notes area in conventional bibliography has been assigned specific elements in the TEI scheme.

15.1.6 The Source Description

The <sourceDesc> is a mandatory element which records details of the source or sources from which the computer file is derived. It may contain simple prose or a bibliographic citation, using one or more of the following elements:

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

Examples:

<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton
15.2 The Encoding Description

The `<encodingDesc>` element specifies the methods and editorial principles which governed the transcription of the text. Its use is highly recommended. It may be prose description or may contain more specialized elements chosen from the following list:

- `<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.
- `<samplingDecl>` (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.
- `<editorialDecl>` (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.
- `<tagsDecl>` (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document.
- `<refsDecl>` (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.
- `<listPrefixDef>` (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in `teidata.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs.
- `<prefixDef>` (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in `teidata.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs.
- `<classDecl>` (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.
- `<charDecl>` (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

15.2.1 Project Description and Sampling Declaration

Examples of `<projectDesc>` and `<samplingDecl>`:

```
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990. </p>
  </projectDesc>
</encodingDesc>

<encodingDesc>
  <samplingDecl>
```

15.2.2 Editorial Declarations

The `<editorialDecl>` contains a prose description of the practices used when encoding the text. Typically this description should cover such topics as the following, each of which may conveniently be given as a separate paragraph:

**correction**  how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

**normalization**  the extent to which the original source has been regularized or normalized.

**quotation**  what has been done with quotation marks in the original – have they been retained or replaced by entity references, are opening and closing quotes distinguished, etc.

**hyphenation**  what has been done with hyphens (especially end-of-line hyphens) in the original – have they been retained, replaced by entity references, etc.

**segmentation**  how has the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

**interpretation**  what analytic or interpretive information has been added to the text.

Example:

```xml
<p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by hand and has not been checked.</p>
<p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling checker.</p>
<p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using Webster's 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
</editorialDecl>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide specialized elements for each of the topics above; these are not however included in TEI simplePrint.

15.2.3 Tagging Declaration

When it does not consist simply of a prose description, the `<tagsDecl>` element may contain a number of more specialized elements providing additional information about how the document concerned has been marked up. The following elements may be used:

**<rendition>**  (rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text.

**<namespace>**  (namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

**<tagUsage>**  (element usage) documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document.

Here is a simple example, showing how these elements may be used. It indicates the number of times the elements `<hi>` and `<title>` from the TEI namespace have been used in the document. It also documents how the way that the source document was originally printed has been represented using TEI tagging.
The `<rendition>` elements here contain fragments expressed in the W3C standard Cascading Stylesheets language (CSS). Their function here is to associate the particular styles concerned with an identifier (for example `rend-bo`) which can then be pointed to from elsewhere within the document by means of the `rendition` attribute mentioned in section 3.5.1. Changes of Typeface, etc. above. To indicate, for example, that a particular name in the document was rendered in a bold font it might be tagged `<name rendition="#rend-bo"/>`. The `selector` attribute used in the preceding example is used to indicate once for all a default rendition value to be associated with several elements: in this example, unless otherwise indicated, it is assumed that the content of each `<hi>` and each `<title>` element was originally rendered using an italic font.

For TEI simplePrint, a large set of such rendition definitions has been predefined. The encoder is not therefore required to supply any detailed declarations, but can refer to the predefined list using the following list:

- `simple:allcaps` all capitals
- `simple:blackletter` black letter or gothic typeface
- `simple:bold` bold typeface
- `simple:bottombraced` marked with a brace under the bottom of the text
- `simple:boxed` border around the text
- `simple:centre` centred text
- `simple:cursive` cursive typeface
- `simple:display` block display
- `simple:doublestrikethrough` strikethrough with double line
- `simple:doubleunderline` underlined with double line
- `simple:dropcap` initial letter larger or decorated
- `simple:float` floated out of main flow
- `simple:hyphen` with a hyphen here (e.g. in line break)
- `simple:inline` inline rendering
- `simple:justify` justified text
- `simple:italic` italic typeface
- `simple:larger` larger type
- `simple:left` aligned to the left or left-justified
simple:leftbraced marked with a brace on the left side of the text
simple:letterspace larger-than-normal spacing between letters, usually for emphasis
simple:literal fixed-width typeface, spacing preserved
simple:normalstyle upright shape and default weight of typeface
simple:normalweight normal typeface weight
simple:right aligned to the right or right-justified
simple:rightbraced marked with a brace to the right of the text
simple:rotateleft rotated to the left
simple:rotateright rotated to the right
simple:smallcaps small caps
simple:smaller smaller type
simple:superscript superscript
simple:subscript subscript
simple:topbraced marked with a brace above the text
simple:typewriter fixed-width typeface, like typewriter
simple:underline underlined with single line
simple:wavyunderline underlined with wavy line

The simple: prefix used here must be mapped to a location at which the full rendition declaration can be found, by default the XML source of the present document.

Full details of the way these elements may be used are provided in the relevant section of the TEI Guidelines ([http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57](http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD57)).

15.2.4 Reference, Prefix, and Classification Declarations
The <refsDecl> element is used to document the way in which any standard referencing scheme built into the encoding works. In its simplest form, it consists of prose description.
Example:

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>The @n attribute on each <div> element contains the canonical reference for each division in the form XX.yyy where XX is the book number in roman numeral and yyy is the section number in arabic.</p>
  <p>Milestone tags refer to the edition of 1830 as E30 and that of 1850 as E50.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

The <listPrefixDef> element contains one or more <prefixDef> elements, each defining a prefix which has been used to abbreviate references to other documents, for example as the value of a target or other pointing attribute. The definition provides information about how the prefix can be translated automatically into a full URL, as in the following example:
In this case, a pointer value in the form psn:MDH would be translated to http://www.example.com/personography.xml#MDH.

The <classDecl> element groups together definitions or sources for any descriptive classification schemes or taxonomies used by other parts of the header. These schemes may be defined in a number of different ways, using one or more of the following elements:

- <taxonomy> (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.
- <bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.
- <category> (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.
- <catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>.

In the simplest case, the taxonomy may be defined by a bibliographic reference, as in the following example:

```xml
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LC-SH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Alternatively, or in addition, the encoder may define a special purpose classification scheme, as in the following example:

```xml
<taxonomy xml:id="B">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="B.A">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="B.A1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="B.A6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```
Linkage between a particular text and a category within such a taxonomy is made by means of the `<catRef>` element within the `<textClass>` element, as described in the next section.

### 15.2.5 The character declaration

As mentioned in section 5.2. Formulae, Codes, and Special Characters above, the element `<g>` is used to indicate the presence of a nonstandard character or glyph in a transcription, and to reference a definition or description of it in the Header. These definitions are provided by means of the following specialised elements given within the `<charDecl>` component of the `<encodingDesc>`

- `<char>` (character) provides descriptive information about a character.
- `<glyph>` (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.
- `<charName>` (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.
- `<glyphName>` (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.
- `<desc>` (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity.
- `<mapping>` (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the `type` attribute.

For example, the alchemical symbol for air might be encoded where it appears in a text using a `<g>` element, whose `ref` attribute might have a value `#air` to link to the following simple definition for the symbol concerned:

```
<char xml:id="air">
  <charName>ALCHEMICAL SYMBOL FOR AIR</charName>
  <mapping type="standard"></mapping>
</char>
```


### 15.3 The Profile Description

The `<profileDesc>` element gathers together information about various descriptive aspects of a text. It has the following optional components:

- `<creation>` (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.
- `<abstract>` contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder.
- `<particDesc>` (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.
15.3 The Profile Description

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata.

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text.

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

The <creation> element documents where a work was created, even though it may not have been published or recorded there:
Example:

<creation>
<date when="1992-08">August 1992</date>
<name type="place">Taos, New Mexico</name>
</creation>

The <abstract> element may be used to provide a brief summary or abstract of the document concerned. It is most usually applied to texts born digital:

<profileDesc>
<abstract>
<p>This paper is a draft studying various aspects of using the TEI as a reference serialization framework for LMF. Comments are welcome to bring this to a useful document for the community.</p>
</abstract>
</profileDesc>

The <particDesc> element is used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional participants in a text, for example the characters in a novel or a play. It contains at least one <listPerson> element, which contains individual <person> elements.

(list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

<person> (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. For example:

<profileDesc>
<particDesc>
<listPerson>
<person xml:id="OPI">
<p>
  <name>Dr Opimian</name>: named for the famous Roman fine wine.</p>
</person>
<person xml:id="GRM">
<p>
  <name>Mr Gryll</name>: named for the mythical Gryllus, one of Ulysses' sailors transformed by Circe into a pig, who argues that he was happier in that state than as a man.</p>
</person>
</listPerson>
</particDesc>
</profileDesc>
In the same way, the `<settingDesc>` element can be used to list descriptive information about the real or fictional places mentioned in a text. It contains at least one `<listPlace>` element, which contains individual `<place>` elements.

**<listPlace**> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

**<place**> (place) contains data about a geographic location

For example:

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <listPlace>
      <head>Houses mentioned in <title>Pride and Prejudice</title></head>
      <place xml:id="NETF1">
        <p>
          <name>Netherfield Park</name>: home of the Bingleys
        </p>
      </place>
      <place xml:id="PEMB1">
        <p>
          <name>Pemberley</name>: home of Mr Darcy
        </p>
      </place>
    </listPlace>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

The full TEI Guidelines provide a rich range of additional elements to define more structured information about persons and places; these are not however available in TEI Simple.

The `<langUsage>` element is useful where a text contains many different languages. It may contain `<language>` elements to document each particular language used:

**<language**> (language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

For example, a text containing predominantly text in French as spoken in Quebec, but also smaller amounts of British and Canadian English might be documented as follows:

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian Business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

The `<textClass>` element classifies a text. This may be done with reference to a classification system locally defined by means of the `<classDecl>` element, or by reference to some externally defined established scheme such as the Universal Decimal Classification. Texts may also be classified using lists of keywords, which may themselves be drawn from locally or externally defined control lists. The following elements are used to supply such classifications:

**<classCode**> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

**<catRef**> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

**<keywords**> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

The simplest way of classifying a text is by means of the `<classCode>` element. For example, a text with classification 410 in the Universal Decimal Classification might be documented as follows:
When a classification scheme has been locally defined using the <taxonomy> element discussed in the preceding subsection, the <catRef> element should be used to reference it. To continue the earlier example, a work classified in the Brown Corpus as Press reportage - Sunday and also as Religion might be documented as follows:

<catRef target="#B.A3 #B.D"/>

The element <keywords> contains one or more keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text, each tagged as a <term>. As usual, the attribute scheme identifies the source from which these terms are taken. For example, if the LC Subject Headings are used, following declaration of that classification system in a <taxonomy> element as above:

<textClass>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>English literature</term>
    <term>History and criticism</term>
    <term>Data processing.</term>
  </keywords>
</textClass>

Multiple classifications may be supplied using any of the mechanisms described in this section.

15.4 Other forms of metadata

The TEI header was one of the first attempts to provide a full range of metadata elements, but it is by no means the only standard now used for this purpose. To facilitate the management of large digital collections and to simplify interoperability of TEI and non-TEI resources, the following element may be found useful:

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed.

A typical use for this element might be to store a set of descriptors conforming to the Dublin Core standard in the TEI header rather than to generate them automatically from the corresponding TEI elements. For examples and discussion, see the TEI Guidelines at http://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD9

15.5 The Revision Description

The <revisionDesc> element provides a change log in which each significant change made to a text may be recorded. It is always the last element in a <teiHeader> and contains the following elements:

<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file.

$listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text.

Each <change> element contains a brief description of a significant change. The attributes when and who may be used to identify when the change was carried out and the person responsible for it.

It is good practice (but not required) to group changes together within a <listChange> element.

Example:
In a production environment it will usually be found preferable to use some kind of automated system to track and record changes. Many such version control systems, as they are known, can also be configured to update the TEI header of a file automatically.

16 The Simple Processing Model

Unlike most other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint includes documentation of the intended processing associated with the majority of elements. As noted above, the TEI provides components such as the rendition attribute to indicate the appearance of particular parts of a document in the non-digital source from which it is derived. With TEI simplePrint, it is also possible to indicate how in general an element should be processed, in particular its intended appearance when processed for display on a screen or on paper. This ability derives from a number of capabilities recently added to the TEI architecture for the specification of processing, which were developed as part of the project that defined the TEI simplePrint schema.

The key feature of this Processing Model is a notation that allows the encoder to associate each element with one or more categories, which we call its behaviours. In addition, the Processing Model indicates how the element should be rendered, possibly differently in differing circumstances, using the W3C Cascading Style Sheets (CSS) mentioned above. It is consequently much easier to develop processors for documents conforming to TEI simplePrint, since the complexity of the task is much reduced.

Twenty-five different behaviours are currently defined by the TEI Processing Model. Their names indicate informally the categorization concerned, and should be readily comprehensible for most programmers. The following table indicates the TEI simplePrint elements associated with each:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Behaviour Used by</th>
<th>Effect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alternate choice date</td>
<td>support display of alternative visualizations, for example by displaying the preferred content, by displaying both in parallel, or by toggling between the two.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anchor anchor</td>
<td>create an identifiable anchor point in the output.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>block address addrLine argument back body byline closer dateline div docTitle epigraph figure floatingText formula front/fw group head imprimatur l lg listBibl note opener postscript q quote role roleDesc salute signed sp speaker spGrp stage titlePage titlePart trailer</td>
<td>create a block structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body text</td>
<td>create the body of a document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break cb lb pb</td>
<td>create a line, column, or page break according to the value of type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cell cell</td>
<td>create a table cell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 17 The TEI simplePrint schema

Like other TEI customizations, TEI simplePrint is defined by reference to the TEI Guidelines. The following reference documentation provides formal specifications for each element, model class, attribute class, macro and datatype it uses. These concepts are further explained in the TEI Guidelines.

Specifications are provided here for each component which has been modified for inclusion in TEI simplePrint. Almost every textual element has been modified, if only to include a processing model component. Note that the cross references included in these specifications are to the section of the full TEI Guidelines where the subject is treated, and not to sections of the present document.
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

17.1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(at.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(at.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.describedResource

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: teiHeader

transcr: facsimile

Note This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the xmlns attribute.

Example

<TEI version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5 version using a name space.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>

Example

<TEI version="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>

46
Unpublished demonstration file.

No source: this is an original work.

No source: this is an original work.

Schematron <sch:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

Schematron <sch:ns prefix="xs" uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

Schematron <sch:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.resource" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <elementRef key="TEI" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element TEI {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( teiHeader, ( ( model.resource+, TEI* ) | TEI+ ) )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="document"/>
```

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition ( @rendition) att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic ( @ana) att.global.facs ( @facs) att.global.responsibility
(\@cert, \@resp)) \(\text{att.global.source}\) (\@source) \(\text{att.types}\) (\@type, \@subtype)
\(\text{att.fragmentable}\) (\@part) \(\text{att.written}\) (\@hand)

Member of \text{model.pLike}

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage
corpus: particDesc settingDesc
drama: castList set
figures: cell figure
header: abstract availability change editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc langUsage
licence prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt refsDecl samplingDecl seriesStmt sourceDesc
namesdates: person place
textstructure: argument back body div epigraph front postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibliog cb choice cit corr date del desc email expat foreign gap
    graphic hi ilab lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
    ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note The \text{<ab>} element may be used at the encoder’s discretion to mark any
component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate
markup is defined.

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<\div type="book" n="Genesis">
  \<\div type="chapter" n="1">
    \<\ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</\ab>
    \<\ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
        darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
        spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</\ab>
    \<\ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</\ab>
  \</\div>
\</\div>
\end{verbatim}

Schematron \(<\text{s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"}>\) Abstract model violation: ab
may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. \(<\text{s:report}>\)
<abbr>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg"> Abstract model violation:
Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ab
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.fragmentable.attributes,
    att.written.attributes,
    macro.paraContent
  }
```

Processing Model

```
  <model behaviour="paragraph"/>
```

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. 3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions

Module core

Attributes Attributes

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{att.global} & : (\text{xml:id}, \text{n}, \text{xml:lang}, \text{xml:base}, \text{xml:space}) \\
\text{att.global.rendition} & : (\text{rendition}) \\
\text{att.global.linking} & : (\text{corresp}, \text{next}, \text{prev}) \\
\text{att.global.analytic} & : (\text{ana}) \\
\text{att.global.facs} & : (\text{facs}) \\
\text{att.global.responsibility} & : (\text{cert, resp}) \\
\text{att.global.source} & : (\text{source}) \\
\text{att.typed} & : (\text{type}, \text{subtype})
\end{align*}
\]

\text{type} (type) allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: suspension (suspension) the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

 contraction (contraction) the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

 brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

 superscription (superscription) the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

 acronym (acronym) the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

 title (title) the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

 organization (organization) the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

 geographic (geographic) the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

65
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Schema Declaration

```
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
Abstract contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

**Module header**

Attributes

\begin{itemize}
  \item att.global\{(atxml:id, atn, atxml:lang, atxml:base, atxml:space)\}
  \item att.global.rendition\{(@rendition)\}
  \item att.global.linking\{(@corresp, @next, @prev)\}
  \item att.global.analytic\{(@ana)\}
  \item att.global.facs\{(@facs)\}
  \item att.global.responsibility\{(@cert, @resp)\}
  \item att.global.source\{(@source)\}
\end{itemize}

**Member of** model.profileDescPart

**Contained by**

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: list

figures: table

linking: ab

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

**Example**

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <abstract resp="#LB">
  <p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process. From a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal discipline or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of academic subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex ideas and information structures can be represented and manipulated, even without the use of a computer. </p>
  </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```
{ att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike | model.listLike )+ }
```

`<actor>` contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists](#)

Module drama

**Attributes**
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.canonical (@ref)

**Member of** model.castItemPart

**Contained by**
- drama: castItem

**May contain**
- analysis: e, pc, w

**Core**
- abbr, add, address, eb, choice, cit, corr, date, del, email, expand, foreign, gap, graphic, hi, lb, measure, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, q, quote, ref, reg, rs, sic, term, time, title, unclear

**figures**
- figure, formula

**gaiji**
- g

**header**
- idno

**linking**
- anchor, seg

**tagdocs**
- code

**textstructure**
- floatingText

**transcr**
- fw, subst, supplied

**verse**
- rhyme

**character data**

**Note** This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 13. Names, Dates, People, and Places discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

**Example**

```xml
<castItem>
  <role>Mathias</role>
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
  <actor ref="https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Irving">Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
{ att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike | model.listLike )+ }
```
Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an
author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and
Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (atts.global.facs (@facs)) (atts.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (atts.global.source (@source)) att.transcriptional (@status, @cause,
@seq) (atts.editLike) (atts.written (@hand)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign
head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
dramat: ab seg
gi: figure formula table

May contain

analysis: @ pc s w

cor: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi l label lb log list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q q quote
ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castItem
dader: castList
gaiji: g

core: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme
Note In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the `<add>` element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the `<corr>` or `<supplied>` element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of `<add>` may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

The story I am going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the consequences `<add place="above">of these facts</add>` from which this tale takes its title.

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition>color: green; text-decoration: underline;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

`<addrLine>` (address line) contains one line of a postal address.

Module core

Attributes Attributes `att.global` `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`

`att.global.rendition` `@rendition` `att.global/linking` `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`

`att.global/analytics` `@ana` `att.global/facs` `@facs` `att.global/responsibility`

Member of `model.addrPart`

Contains by `address`

May contain `pc` `w`
Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<addrLine>
  <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition>white-space: nowrap;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.6.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]
Module core
Attributes Attributes `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`

- `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global.facs (@facs)`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.global.source (@source)`

Member of `model.addressLike` `model.publicationStmtPart.detail`

Contained by
- analysis
- core: `abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date desc del editor email expan

foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear`
- drama: `actor castItem role roleDesc`
- figures: `cell figDesc`
- header: `catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence

publicationStmt rendition tagUsage`
- linking: `ab seg`
- textstructure: `byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`
- transcr: `fw supplied`
- verse: `rhyme`

May contain
- core: `addrLine cb gap lb milestone name note ph rs`
- figures: `figure`
- header: `idno`
- linking: `anchor`
- transcr: `fw`

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element `<addrLine>` may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the `model.addrPart` class, such as `<street>`, `<postCode>` etc.

Example Using just the elements defined by the core module, an address could be represented as follows:

```xml
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name>Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example When a schema includes the names and dates module more specific elements such as country or settlement would be preferable over generic `<name>`:

```xml
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <settlement>Bologna</settlement>
  <country>Italy</country>
</address>
```
Example

```xml
<address>
  <country key="FR"/>
  <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
  <postcode>69002</postcode>
  <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
  <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
  <street>
    <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun
  </street>
</address>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element name="address">
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    ( model.global*, ( model.addrPart, model.global* )+ )
  }
</element>
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition>margin-top: 2em; margin-left: 2em; margin-right: 2em; margin-bottom: 2em;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap] [16.5. Correspondence and Alignment]
May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global xml:id attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/></s>

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```
element anchor { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="anchor">
  <param name="id" value="@xml:id"/>
</model>
```

<argument> (argument) contains a formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text. 

4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 

4.6. Title Pages

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Example

<argument>
  <l>With sighs and tears her love he doth desire</l>
  <l>Since Cupid hath his senses set on fire</l>
  <l>His torment and his pain to her he shews</l>
  <l>With all his protestations and his vows</l>
  <l>At last she yields to grant him some relief</l>
  <l>And make him joyful after all his grief</l>
</argument>

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element argument {
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.headLike )* , ( model.common , model.global* )* )
}
```

Processing Model
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-bottom: 0.5em;</outputRendition>
</model>

<author> (author) in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))  
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.faces (@faces)) (att.global.responsibility  
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.global.responsibility  
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)  
(att.canonical (@ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, 
@notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt titleStmt
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb 
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title 
unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes key or ref may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as Unknown or Anonymous. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example
<availability>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element author
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.naming.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq}

Processing Model

<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
  behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>

<availability> (availability) supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@status (status) supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: free (free) the text is freely available.
unknown (unknown) the status of the text is unknown.
restricted (restricted) the text is not freely available.

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

77
core: bibl
header: publicationStmt
May contain
core: p
header: licence
linking: ab
Note  A consistent format should be adopted
Example

<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>

Example

<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy
      of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
      to deal
      in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights
      to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell
      copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:
      The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.
    </p>
  </licence>
</availability>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```
<back>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element availability
{
    att.global.attributes,
    attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
    ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

<back> *(back matter)* contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.


**Module** textstructure

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

**Contained by**

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

**May contain**

core: ch gap head lb list listBibl milestone note p pb
drama: castList set
figures: figure table
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr:fw

**Note**

Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the `<back>` and `<front>` elements are identical.

**Example**

```
<back>
  <div type="appendix">
    <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
    <p>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be misled by Trinkets and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after she became rich, she had like to have been, too fond of Money</p>
  </div>
</back>
```

79
A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted

Sir,

I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if you please;

!... ... ...

The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.

The Christmas Box, Price 1d.

The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.

A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers of all Nations,

10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.

By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.

Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, 6c. 2s. 6d

Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.

!... ... ...

Content model

<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
<classRef key="model.divLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```
<element back {
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.pLike | model.listLike | model.global )*,

  (model.div1Like, ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )* )?
  (model.divLike, ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )* )?

  (model.divBottomPart, ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )?
  }
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="block"/>`

```
(bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of
which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.12.1. Methods of
Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source
Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
```

Module core
Attributes
`att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
`att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
`att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
`att.global.analytic (@ana)`
`att.global.facs (@facs)`
`att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
`att.global.source (@source)`
`att.typed (@type, @subtype)`
`att.sortable (@sortKey)`
`att.docStatus (@status)`

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by core: add bibl cit corr del desc head hi item listBibl note orig p q ref reg
relatedItem sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

linking: ab seg
namesdates: person place
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme
May contain analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice corr date del editor email expan
foreign gap hi lo measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q ref reg relatedItem respStmt refs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure
gaiji: g
header: availability distributor edition extent idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
transcr: fw subst supplied
character data

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the model.biblPart class

Example

<epigraph>
  <bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
  <q>11 Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain, for the Lord will not hold him guiltleffe which shall take his name in vain.</q>
</epigraph>

Schematron <s:assert test="child::* or child::text()[normalize-space()]" role="ERROR"> Element "<s:name/>" may not be empty. </s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
```
<biblFull>

att.sortable.attributes,
att.docStatus.attributes,
{
  text
  | model.gLike | model.highlighted | model.pPart.data | model.pPart.edit |
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="parent::listBibl"
  behaviour="listItem"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References
2.2. The File Description 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person place
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

header: editionStmt extent fileDesc notesStmt profileDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Example

<sourceDesc>
  <biblFull>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Buxom Joan of Lymas's love to a jolly sailor: or, The maiden's choice: being love for love again. To an excellent new play-house tune.</title>
      <author>Congreve, William, 1670-1729.</author>
    </titleStmt>
  </biblFull>
</sourceDesc>
<extent>1 sheet ([1] p.): music. </extent>
<publicationStmt>
<publisher>printed for P[hilip]. Brooksby, at the Golden-ball, in Pye-corner.,</publisher>
<pubPlace>London: :</pubPlace>
<date>[between 1693-1695]</date>
</publicationStmt>
<notesStmt>
<note>Attributed to William Congreve by Wing.</note>
<note>Date of publication and publisher's name from Wing.</note>
<note>Verse: "A soldier and a sailor ..."</note>
<note>Printed in two columns.</note>
<note>Reproduction of original in the British Library.</note>
</notesStmt>
</biblFull>
</sourceDesc>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
        <elementRef key="editionStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
        <elementRef key="seriesStmt" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <elementRef key="notesStmt" minOccurs="0"/>
      </sequence>
    </sequence>
    <elementRef key="sourceDesc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
    <elementRef key="profileDesc"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    titleStmt,
    editionStmt?,
    extent?,
    publicationStmt,
    seriesStmt*,
    notesStmt?
  ),
  sourceDesc*
}
<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.12.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.citing (@unit, @from, @to)

Member of model.imprintPart
Contained by
core: bibl
header: seriesStmt
May contain
analysis: c p s w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb
   measure milestone name note num orig pb quoteref reg rs sic term time title
   unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
   character data

Note When a single page is being cited, use the from and to attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the from attribute may be used without
   to; for example a citation such as p. 3ff might be encoded <biblScope from="3">p. 3ff</biblScope>.
   It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a
   child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of
   the imprint.

Example

<biblScope> pp 12-34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>

Content model

<content>
   <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>

85
Schema Declaration

element biblScope
{
        att.global.attributes,
        att.citing.attributes,
        macro.phraseSeq
}

Processing Model
<model behaviour="inline"/>

<body>
(text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

Module textstructure

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

core: bibl cb ci cit desc gap head label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
stage
drama: castList
dragons: figure table
header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph
floatingText opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

Example

<body>
<l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
<l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
<l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
<l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
<l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
<l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
<trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>

Content model

<content>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.global"
**Schema Declaration**

```xml
<element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    model.global*,
    ( model.divTop, ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( model.divGenLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )*+
    }|
    ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )*+
    |
    ( model.common, model.global* )+,
    { ( model.divLike, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )*+
      | ( model.div1Like, ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )*+
      )?
    }
  ),
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<modelSequence>
<model behaviour="index">  
<param name="type" value="'toc'"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"/>
</modelSequence>
```

**<byline>** (byline) contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers] [4.5. Front Matter]

**Module** textstructure

- **Attributes**
  - `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  - `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
  - `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
  - `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
  - `att.global.facs` (@facs)
  - `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)

- **Member of**
  - model.divWrapper
  - model.pLike.front
  - model.titlepagePart

- **Contained by**
Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

Example

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the while in London. Never made publick before.</byline>

Example

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>

Example

<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>

Example

<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <elementRef key="docAuthor"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```xml
element byline
{
    att.global.attributes,
    ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<c>
(character) represents a character. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.fragmentable (@part)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.notated (@notation)

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

- analysis: pc s w
- core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
- figures: cell
- header: change distributor edition extent licence
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw supplied zone
- verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g
character data

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The type attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

Example

```xml
<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>O</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>
  <w>life</w>
</phr>
```
<castGroup>

Content model:  
<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/> </content>

Schema Declaration:

```xml
<element c {
    att.global.attributes,  
    att.segLike.attributes,  
    att.typed.attributes,  
    att.notated.attributes,  
    macro.xtext}>
```

Processing Model:

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual <castItem> elements within a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
drama: castGroup castList

May contain
core: cb gap head lb milestone note pb
drama: castGroup castItem roleDesc
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: trailer
transcr: fw

Note: The rend attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc.

Note that in this example the role description friends of Mathias is understood to apply to both roles equally.

Example

```xml
<castGroup rend="braced">
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
  <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>
```

Content model:

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="ubounded">
```

91
Schema Declaration

```xml
<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list">
<desc>Insert list. </desc>
</model>
```

Processing Model

```
Schema Declaration

element castGroup
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (? ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
    (? ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
    (? trailer, model.global* )?)
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list">
<desc>Insert list. </desc>
</model>
```

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>att.global.attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:id</td>
<td>Unique identifier for the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@n</td>
<td>numerically unique identifier.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:lang</td>
<td>Language of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:base</td>
<td>Base URI of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:space</td>
<td>Space of the element.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>att.global.rendition (rendition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@rendition</td>
<td>Rendition attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>att.global.linking (corresp, next, prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@corresp</td>
<td>Correspondence attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@next</td>
<td>Next element attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@prev</td>
<td>Previous element attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>att.global.analytic (ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ana</td>
<td>Analytic attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>att.global.facs (facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@facs</td>
<td>Facsimile attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@cert</td>
<td>Certification attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@resp</td>
<td>Responsibility attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>att.global.source (@source)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@source</td>
<td>Source attribute.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>att.typed (type, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@type</td>
<td>Characterizes the cast item.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td>Optional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Datatype</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default</td>
<td>role</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Contained drama: castGroup castList
May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb pb ref reg res sic term time title unclear
drama: actor role roleDesc
dialogues: actor role roleDesc
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Example

```xml
<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

Example

```xml
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.castItemPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element castItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="listItem">
  <desc>Insert item, rendered as described in parent list rendition.</desc>
</model>
```
<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [7.1.4. Cast Lists
7.1. Front and Back Matter ]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.frontPart.drama model.inter

Contained by
core: add corr del desc hi item note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript
salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain
core: bibl cb cl desc gap head label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
stage
drama: castGroup castItem castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText opener
salute signed
transcr: fw

Example

<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
      <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Cripple</role>
      <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
</castList>
<role>Si Bero</role><roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc><actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor></castItem>
<castGroup>
<head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
<castItem>
<role>Iya Agba</role>
<actor>Nguba Agolia</actor></castItem>
<castItem>
<role>Iya Mate</role>
<actor>Bopo George</actor></castItem>
</castGroup>
<castItem>
<role>Dr Bero</role><roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
<actor>Nat Okoro</actor></castItem>
<castItem>
<role>Priest</role>
<actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor></castItem>
<castItem>
<role>The old man</role><roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
<actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor></castItem>
</castList>
<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>

Content model

```xml
<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="castItem"/>
<elementRef key="castGroup"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.common"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Schema Declaration

element castList
{
    att.global.attributes,
    
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.common, model.global* )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+,
    ( model.common, model.global* )*
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="child::*" behaviour="list"
useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>list-style: ordered;</outputRendition>
</model>

<catDesc> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal <textDesc>. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Contained by

header: category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date email expan foreign hi measure name num q ref rs
term time title

header: idno
tagdocs: code

transcr: subst

character data

Example

<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>

Example

<catDesc>
<textDesc n="novel">
<channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
</textDesc>

96
<catRef>

<constitution type="single"/>
<derivation type="original"/>
<domain type="art"/>
<factuality type="fiction"/>
<interaction type="none"/>
<preparedness type="prepared"/>
<purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
<purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
</textDesc>
</catDesc>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.catDescPart )*
}

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition ))
(att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana ))
(att.global.fac ( @fac ))
(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ))
(att.global.source ( @source ))
att.pointing ( @targetLang, @target, @evaluate )

@scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain Empty element

Note The scheme attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

Example

<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
  target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
  <category xml:id="news">
    <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="prov">
    <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sales2">
    <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>

Content model

```
<content> <empty/></content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
<category>
  (category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]
</category>
```

Module header

Attributes

```
att.global.attributes,
att.pointing.attributes,
attribute scheme { text }?,
empty
```

Contained by

- category
- taxonomy

May contain

- desc

header:

```
catRef
catDesc
category
category
category
```

Example

```xml
<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```xml
<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```
Example

```xml
<category xml:id="LIT">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
</category>

<category xml:id="LPROSE">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
</category>

<category xml:id="LPOETRY">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
</category>

<category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
</category>
</category>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
        <elementRef key="equiv"/>
        <elementRef key="gloss"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( catDesc+ | ( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )* ), category* )
}
```

(cb) (column beginning) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)
- `att.edition` (@ed, @edRef)
- `att.spanning` (@spanTo)
- `att.breaking` (@break)

Member of `model.milestoneLike`

Contained by
analysis: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value
associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb>
element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the
numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of
the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page.
The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```xml
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
  <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
  sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
  or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
</entryFree>
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
  containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
  Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Content model <content> <empty/></content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
}```
### Module figures

**Attributes**
- `att.global (xml:id, n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)`
- `(att.global.rendition (rendition)) (att.global.linking (corresp, next, prev))`
- `(att.global.analytic (ana)) (att.global.facs (facs)) (att.global.responsibility (cert, resp))`
- `(att.global.source (source)) att.tableDecoration (role, @rows, @cols)`

**@role** (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

*Derived from* `att.tableDecoration`

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`

**Legal values are:**
- `data` data cell [Default]
- `label` label cell
- `sum` row or column sum data
- `total` table total data

**Contains figures:** row

**May contain analysis:** c pc w

**Core:**
- `abbr` `add` `address` `bibl` `ch` `choice` `cit` `corr` `date` `desc` `email` `expan` `foreign` `gap` `graphic` `hi` `label` `lb` `lg` `list` `listBibl` `measure` `milestone` `name` `note` `num` `orig` `p` `pb` `q` `quote` `ref` `reg` `rs` `sic` `sp` `stage` `term` `time` `title` `unclear`

**Drama:** `castList`

**Figures:**
- `figure`
- `formula`
- `table`

**Gaiji:**
- `g`

**Header:**
- `biblFull`
- `idno`

**Linking:**
- `ab` `anchor` `seg`

**NamesDates:**
- `listPerson`
- `listPlace`

**Tagdocs:**
- `code`

**Textstructure:**
- `FloatingText`

**Transcr:**
- `fw` `subst` `supplied`

**Verse:**
- `rhyme`
- `character` data

**Example**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>empty</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element cell {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
  attribute role {
    "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
  macro.specialPara
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="cell">
  <desc>Insert table cell. </desc>
</model>
```

<change> (change) documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1. Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes: Attributes  att.ascribed (@who)  att.datable (@calendar, @period)
            (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))  att.docStatus
            (@status)  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
            (att.global.rendition (@rendition))  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
            (att.global.analytic (@ana))  (att.global.facs (@facs))  (att.global.responsibility)
            (@cert, @resp)  (att.global.source (@source))  att.typed (@type, @subtype)
@target (target) points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

  Status: Optional
  Datatype: 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Containable: listChange revisionDesc
May contain:
  analysis: c p s w
  core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expand foreign gap
        graphic hi ll lb lg listBibl listCore measure milestone name note num orig p ph q
        quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
  drama: castList
  figures: figure formula table
The `who` attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The `status` attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example

```xml
<titleStmt>
<title>... </title>
<editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
<respStmt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp,copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly using green ink</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```
<element change {
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { + }},
  macro.specialPara}

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.  

Module gaiji
Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))  
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility  
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
gaiji:  charDecl

May contain
core:  desc, graphic, note
figures:  figure, formula

Example

<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <localProp name="Name"  
    value="CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA"/>
  <localProp name="daikanwa" value="36"/>
  <unicodeProp name="Decomposition_Mapping"  
    value="circle"/>
  <mapping type="standard"/>
</mapping>

</char>

Content model

```

```
(character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.globalunlinking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc
gaiji: char glyph

Example

```
<charDecl>
  <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
  </char>
</charDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="char"/>
      <elementRef key="glyph"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<charDecl>{att.global.attributes, (desc?, (char | glyph)+)}
```

105
<charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Deprecated will be removed on 2022-02-15

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )

( att.global.analytic (@ana) )

( att.global.facs (@facs) )

( att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) )

( att.global.source (@source) )

Contained by

gaiji: char

May contain Character data only

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange.

Example

<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>

Content model <content> <textNode/></content>

Schema Declaration element charName { att.global.attributes, text }

(choice) groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )

( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )

( att.global.analytic (@ana) )

( att.global.facs (@facs) )

( att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) )

( att.global.source (@source) )

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc sw

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drages: cell cellDesc
drages: cell cellDesc
header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear
linking: seg
transcr: supplied

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of
encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive.
However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the
alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.

Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work,
rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the
<app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus
Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of Gulliver’s Travels which retains the British spelling but
also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
<sic>1724</sic>
<corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
<orig>favour</orig>
<reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>

Schematron <s:assert test="count(*) > 1" role="ERROR"> Element ”<s:name/>”
must have at least two child elements.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="(tei:corr or tei:sic or tei:expan or tei:abbr or tei:reg or
tei:orig) and ((tei:corr and tei:sic) or (tei:expan and tei:abbr) or (tei:reg and
tei:orig))” role="ERROR"> Element ”<s:name/>” must have corresponding
corr/sic, expand/abbr, reg/orig </s:assert>

Content model

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="2"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
<elementRef key="choice"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element choice { att.global.attributes, ( model.choicePart | choice )+ }

Processing Model

<model output="plain"
predicate="sic and corr" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="corr[1]"/>
</model>
<model output="plain"
predicate="abbr and expan" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="expan[1]"/>
</model>
<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a
bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text
with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a
translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts
9.3.5.1. Examples]

Module core
Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by:
analysis: $\delta$
core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign
head hi item | label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear
drama: actor castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur
postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: fw supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain:
analysis: pc
core: bib bc cit gap graphic lb listBibl milestone note pb q quote ref
figures: figure formula
header: biblFull
and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an insupportable smell, as to bring on disorder of the brain.

Ulloa's South America

Example

<horrifier>
  to horrify
</horrifier>

elle était horrifiée par la dépense

she was horrified at the expense.

I'm speaking on behalf of Pedro.

Estoy hablando de parte de Pedro.

Content model

<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <elementRef key="q"/>
</alternate>

Schema Declaration
element cit
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    { model.biblLike | model.global | model.graphicLike | model.ptrLike | model.attributable | pc | q }+
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="child::quote and child::bibl"
    behaviour="cit">
    <desc>Insert citation</desc>
</model>

<classCode> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header
Attributes:
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
@scheme identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy> element, or some other resource.
Status: Required
Datatype: teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain:
core: abbr address cb choice date email expan foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name
       note num pb q ref rs term time title
figures: figure
header: idno
linking: anchor
tagdocs: code
transcr: fw subst

character data

Example

<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>

Content model

<content>
    <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration
(classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global.attributes</td>
<td>(xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>(@rendition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>(@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>(@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>(@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>(@cert, @resp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>(@source)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Example

```
<classDecl>
  <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
    <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
  </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
  element classDecl { att.global.attributes, taxonomy+ }
```

Module textstructure

<closer> (closer) groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]
Attributes

\textbullet att.global \@xml:id, \_n, \_xml:lang, \_xml:base, \_xml:space
\textbullet att.global.rendition \_rendition
\textbullet att.global.linking \_corresp, \_next, \_prev
\textbullet att.global.analytic \_ana
\textbullet att.global.facs \_facs
\textbullet att.global.responsibility \_cert, \_resp
\textbullet att.global.source \_source
\textbullet att.written \_hand

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

\textbullet core: lg list
\textbullet figures: figure table
\textbullet textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

\textbullet analysis: c pc w
\textbullet core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
\textbullet figures: figure formula
\textbullet gaiji: g
\textbullet header: idno
\textbullet linking: anchor seg
\textbullet tagdocs: code
textstructure: dateline salute signed
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<div type="letter">
  <p>perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
  </closer>
</div>
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<div type="chapter">
  <p>
  <!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
  Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914–1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
\end{verbatim}

Content model

\begin{verbatim}
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="signed"/>
    <elementRef key="dateline"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
\end{verbatim}
<code>
<elementRef key="salute"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element closer
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.written.attributes,
   {
      text
            |  model.gLike
            |  signed
            |  dateline
            |  salute
            |  model.phrase
            |  model.global
   }
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>margin-top: 1em; margin-left: 1em;
</outputRendition>
</model>

<code> contains literal code from some formal language such as a programming language.

22.1.1. Phrase Level Terms

Module tagdocs

Attributes

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rrendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

@lang (formal language) a name identifying the formal language in which the
code is expressed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

Member of  model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis:

core:

   abbr  add  addrLine  author  bibl  biblScope  corr  date  del  desc  editor  email  expan
   foreign  head  hi  item  label  measure  name  note  num  orig  p  pubPlace  publisher  q
   quote  ref  reg  resp  rs  sic  speaker  stage  term  time  title  unclear

drama:

   actor  castItem  role  roleDesc

doFigure:

   cell  figDesc

header:

   catDesc  change  classCode  creation  distributor  edition  extent  language  licence
   rendition  tagUsage

linking:

   ab  seg

textstructure:

   byline  closer  dateline  docAuthor  docDate  docEdition  docImprint
   imprimatur  opener  salute  signed  titlePart  trailer

transcr:

   fw  supplied
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

verse: rhyme
May contain Character data only
Example

```
<code lang="JAVA"> Size fCheckbox1Size = new Size();
    fCheckbox1Size.Height = 500;
    fCheckbox1Size.Width = 500;
    xCheckbox1.setSize(fCheckbox1Size);
</code>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/> </content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element code { att.global.attributes, attribute lang { text }?, text }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
    <outputRendition>font-family:monospace</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

- analysis: pc s w
- core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan
- foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
- quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
- drama: actor castList item role roleDesc
- figures: cell
- header: change distributor edition extent licence
- linking: ab seg
- textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
- imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
- transcr: fw supplied
- verse: rhyme

May contain

- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
- graphic hi label lb lg listListBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
- reg ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
- drama: castList
If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, `<corr>` may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how can we prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

It is also possible, using the `<choice>` and `<sic>` elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how
<choice>
<sic>we can</sic>
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model predicate="parent::choice and count(parent::*) gt 1" behaviour="inline">
  <desc>simple inline, if in parent choice. </desc>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '\[';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '\]';</outputRendition>
</model>
```
<creation> (creation) contains information about the creation of a text.  

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period)
(att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by header: profileDesc

May contain core: abbr address choice date email expant foreign hi measure name num q ref rs term
time title

header: idno listChange
tagdocs: code
transcr: subst

character data

Note The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text’s creation, e.g. the
date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.

It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions
associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the
<listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt>

Example

<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>

Example

<creation>
  <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
Example

<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example

<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>

Content model

```xml
<content>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <textNode/>
        <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
        <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element date {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.canonical.attributes,
    att.datable.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    att.dimensions.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model output="print" predicate="text()" behaviour="inline"/>
<model output="print"
predicate="@when and not(text())" behaviour="inline">
    <param name="content" value="@when"/>
</model>
<model output="web" predicate="@when"
behaviour="alternate">
    <param name="default" value="."/>
    <param name="alternate" value="@when"/>
</model>
<model predicate="text()" behaviour="inline"/>
```

/dateline/ (dateline) contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes

```
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
```
<dateline>

(Walden, this 29. of August 1592)

Example

<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>

Example

<content>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<textNode/>
<classRef key="model.gLike"/>
<classRef key="model.phrase"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
<elementRef key="docDate"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global | docDate )* 
}

Processing Model <model behaviour="block"/>

<del>(deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions

Module core
Attributes Attributes
att.global: (xml:id, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
   (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana))
   (att.global.facets (@facs))
   (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
   (att.global.source (@source))
   att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq)
   att.editLike (@editLike)
   att.written (@hand)
   att.typed (@type, @subtype)
   att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)

Member of model.linePart, model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by
analysis: pc sw
core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expant foreign
   head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
   reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: 
cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
   imprimatur opener salutes signed titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain
analysis: c pc sw

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expant foreign gap
   graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
   ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList
figures: figure formula table

gaiji: gc

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
**verse**: rhyme
character data

**Note** This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The `<delSpan>` element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a `<supplied>` tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the `<gap>` tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the `<gap>` element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the `<unclear>` element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the `<certainty>` element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between `<del>` and `<surplus>` on the one hand and `<gap>` or `<unclear>` on the other. `<del>` indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author’s or a later scribe’s intent to cancel or remove text. `<surplus>` indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. `<gap>` or `<unclear>`, by contrast, signal an editor’s or encoder’s decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

**Example**

```xml
<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
  weht der Wind
</l>
```

**Example**

```xml
<del rend="overstrike">
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/>
</del>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
}</del>
```
<desc> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facis (@facis)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (-----, @subtype)
@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.
Derived from att.typed
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated
<dataSpec module="tei"
ident="teidata.point"
validUntil="2050-02-25">
<desc type="deprecationInfo"
versionDate="2018-09-14"
xm:lang='en'>Several standards bodies, including NIST in the USA,
strongly recommend against ending the representation of a number
with a decimal point. So instead of <q>3.</q> use either
<q>3</q>
or <q>3.0</q>.</desc>
</dataSpec>

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by
core: add corr del desc gap graphic head hi item | | | list listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

figures: cell figDesc figure

gaiji: char charDecl glyph

header: category change licence listChange listPrefixDef rendition tagUsage taxonomy

linking: ab seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace place

textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed

transcr: supplied surface
Note When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

Example

&lt;desc&gt; contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity &lt;/desc&gt;

Schematron A &lt;desc&gt; with a type of deprecationInfo should only occur when its parent element is being deprecated. Furthermore, it should always occur in an element that is being deprecated when &lt;desc&gt; is a valid child of that element.

&lt;sch:rule context="tei:desc[ @type eq 'deprecationInfo']">&lt;sch:assert test="../@validUntil">Information about a deprecation should only be present in a specification element that is being deprecated: that is, only an element that has a @validUntil attribute should have a child &lt;desc type="deprecationInfo"&gt;&lt;/sch:assert&gt; &lt;/sch:rule&gt;

Content model

&lt;content&gt;
  &lt;macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/&gt;
&lt;/content&gt;

Schema Declaration

element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { text }?,
  macro.limitedContent}

Processing Model &lt;model behaviour="inline"/&gt;

&lt;distributor&gt; (distributor) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by
core: bibl
header: publicationStmt

May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: FloatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element distributor {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

<textdivision> contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. 4.1. Divisions of the Body

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample) (att.metrical (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att_written (@hand)

Member of model.divLike

124
Fallacies of Authority

The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.

The Nature of Authority

With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the greatest happiness of the greatest number [...]

Analysis of Authority

What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to be attached to authority [...]

Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.

Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)"> Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report>

Content model

<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</sequence>
</sequence>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternative>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

### Schema Declaration

```xml
<element name="div">
  {att.global.attributes, att.divLike.attributes, att.typed.attributes, att.written.attributes, 
  ( ( model.divTop | model.global )*, 
  ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+, 
  ( ( model.common, model.global* )+, 
  ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )* 
  ), 
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )* 
  )?
}
```

### Processing Model
<docAuthor>

(document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

(att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
core: lg

list

drama: castList

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb

measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title

unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code


textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note The document author’s name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example

<titlePage>
<docTitle>
<titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
Parts.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
<byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon, and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element docAuthor
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.canonical.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@when</td>
<td>(when) gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

- core: lg list
- drama: castList
- figures: figure table
- textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

- analysis: c pc s w
- core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- figures: figure formula
- gaiji: g
- header: idno
Note Cf. the general \textless date\textgreater element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

\begin{quote}
\textless docImprint \rangle Oxford, Clarendon Press, \textless docDate \rangle 1987\textgreater \textless /docDate \rangle
\end{quote}

Content model

\begin{verbatim}
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
\end{verbatim}

Schema Declaration

\begin{verbatim}
element docDate \\
  { att.global.attributes, \\
    attribute when { text }?, \\
    macro.phraseSeq}
\end{verbatim}

Processing Model

\begin{verbatim}
<model behaviour="inline"/>
\end{verbatim}

\section*{docEdition}

(document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. \cite{4.6.Title.Pages}

Module textstructure

Attributes \texttt{att.global} (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) \\
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) \\
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility) \\
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlePagePart

Contained by textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain analysis:  c pc s w

core:  abbr add address bibli cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb li list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs ric stage term time unclear

drama:  castList

figures:  figure formula table

gaiji:  g
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has
been given to the more frequent element.

Example


Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of
publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title
Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address cb choice corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
      measure milestone name note num orig pb pubPlace publisher q ref reg rs sic term
time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: docDate
transcr:_fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example


Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>, at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
    <elementRef key="docDate"/>
    <elementRef key="publisher"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    text
    | model.gLike | model.phrase | pubPlace | docDate | publisher | model.
  }
}

Processing Model <model behaviour="inline"/>

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure
Attributes

\(\text{att.global} (\text{@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space})\)
\(\text{att.global.rendition (}@\text{rendition}@)\) (\text{att.global.linking (}@\text{corresp, @next, @prev}@)\)
\(\text{att.global.analytic (}@\text{ana}@)\) (\text{att.global.facs (}@\text{facs}@)\) (\text{att.global.responsibility (}@\text{cert, @resp}@)\)
\(\text{att.global.source (}@\text{source}@)\) \text{att.canonical (}@\text{ref}@)\)

Member of \text{model.pLike.front, model.titlepagePart}

Contained by
\text{textstructure: back, front, titlePage}

May contain
\text{core: cb, gap, lb, milestone, note, pb}
\text{figures: figure}
\text{linking: anchor}
\text{textstructure: titlePart}
\text{transcr: fw}

Example

\[<\text{docTitle}>\]
\[<\text{titlePart }\text{type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</textPart}>\]
\[<\text{titlePart }\text{type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</textPart}>\]
\[</\text{docTitle}>\]

Content model

\[<\text{content}>\]
\[<\text{sequence }\text{minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">\]
\[<\text{classRef key="model.global">}\]
\[\text{minOccurr="0" maxOccurr="unbounded"/>}\]
\[<\text{sequence }\text{minOccurr="1" maxOccurr="unbounded">}\]
\[<\text{elementRef key="titlePart">}\]
\[<\text{classRef key="model.global">}\]
\[\text{minOccurr="0" maxOccurr="unbounded"/>}\]
\[</\text{sequence}>\]
\[</\text{sequence}>\]
\[</\text{content}>\]

Schema Declaration

\[\text{element docTitle}\]
\[\{\]
\[\text{att.global.attributes,}\]
\[\text{att.canonical.attributes,}\]
\[\text{model.global*, (titlePart, model.global*)+}\]
\[\}\]

Processing Model

\[<\text{model behaviour="block" useSourceRendition="true">\]
\[<\text{outputRendition}>\text{font-size: larger;}</textRendition>\]
\[</\text{model}>\]

\[<\text{edition}>\] (\text{edition}) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. 2.2.2. The Edition Statement]
<editionStmt>

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) )
( att.global.analytic (@ana) )
( att.global.facs (@facs) )
( att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) )
( att.global.source (@source) )

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by
core: bibl
header: editionStmt

May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote reg rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Example

<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
May contain

core: [author] [editor] [respStmt]
header: edition
linking: ab

Example

<editionStmt>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by</resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>

Example

<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date></p>
</editionStmt>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="edition"/>
      <classRef key="model.respLike"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, model.respLike* ) )
}
```

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
  (att.canonical (@ref)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) att.datable.w3c (@when,
  @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.respLike
A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```xml
<editor role="Technical_Editor">Ron Van den Branden</editor>
<editor role="Editor-in-Chief">John Walsh</editor>
<editor role="Managing_Editor">Anne Baillot</editor>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
   <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element editor
{
   att.global.attributes,
   att.naming.attributes,
   att.datable.attributes,
   macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
   behaviour="omit"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
(editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration] [2.3. The Encoding Description] [15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header
Attributes

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{@xml:id}
\item \texttt{@n}
\item \texttt{@xml:lang}
\item \texttt{@xml:base}
\item \texttt{@xml:space}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{@rendition}
\item \texttt{@corresp}
\item \texttt{@next}
\item \texttt{@prev}
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{@ana}
\item \texttt{@facs}
\item \texttt{@cert}
\item \texttt{@resp}
\item \texttt{@source}
\end{itemize}

Member of \texttt{model.encodingDescPart}

Contained by \texttt{header: encodingDesc}

May contain \texttt{p}

linking: \texttt{ab}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<editorialDecl>
  <encodingDesc>
    <p>EEBO-TCP is a partnership between the Universities of Michigan and Oxford and the publisher ProQuest to create accurately transcribed and encoded texts based on the image sets published by ProQuest via their Early English Books Online (EEBO) database (http://eebo.chadwyck.com). The general aim of EEBO-TCP is to encode one copy (usually the first edition) of every monographic English-language title published between 1473 and 1700 available in EEBO.</p>
    <p>EEBO-TCP aimed to produce large quantities of textual data within the usual project restraints of time and funding, and therefore chose to create diplomatic transcriptions (as opposed to critical editions) with light-touch, mainly structural encoding based on the Text Encoding Initiative (http://www.tei-c.org).</p>
    <p>The EEBO-TCP project was divided into two phases. The 25,363 texts created during Phase 1 of the project have been released into the public domain as of 1 January 2015. Anyone can now take and use these texts for their own purposes, but we respectfully request that due credit and attribution is given to their original source.</p>
    <p>Users should be aware of the process of creating the TCP texts, and therefore of any assumptions that can be made about the data.</p>
    <p>Text selection was based on the New Cambridge Bibliography of English Literature (NCBEL). If an author (or for an anonymous work, the title) appears in NCBEL, then their works are eligible for inclusion. Selection was intended to range over a wide variety of subject areas, to reflect the true nature of the print record of the period. In general, first editions of a works in English were</p>
  </encodingDesc>
</editorialDecl>
\end{verbatim}
prioritized, although there are a number of works in other languages, notably Latin and Welsh, included and sometimes a second or later edition of a work was chosen if there was a compelling reason to do so.</p>

Image sets were sent to external keying companies for transcription and basic encoding. Quality assurance was then carried out by editorial teams in Oxford and Michigan. 5% (or 5 pages, whichever is the greater) of each text was proofread for accuracy and those which did not meet QA standards were returned to the keyers to be redone. After proofreading, the encoding was enhanced and/or corrected and characters marked as illegible were corrected where possible up to a limit of 100 instances per text. Any remaining illegibles were encoded as &lt;gap&gt;s. Understanding these processes should make clear that, while the overall quality of TCP data is very good, some errors will remain and some readable characters will be marked as illegible. Users should bear in mind that in all likelihood such instances will never have been looked at by a TCP editor.</p>

The texts were encoded and linked to page images in accordance with level 4 of the TEI in Libraries guidelines.</p>

Copies of the texts have been issued variously as SGML (TCP schema; ASCII text with mnemonic sdata character entities); displayable XML (TCP schema; characters represented either as UTF-8 Unicode or text strings within braces); or lossless XML (TEI P5, characters represented either as UTF-8 Unicode or TEI g elements).</p>

Keying and markup guidelines are available at the Text Creation Partnership web site.</p>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
...
<email> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.6.2. Addresses]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(at.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell figDesc
header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: fw supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg resp rs sic term time title unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
header: idno
linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822
Example

<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>

Content model

<content>
<encodingDesc>

Schema Declaration

```
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Processing Model**

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-family:monospace</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. 2.3. The Encoding Description

**Module** header

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global facs` (@facs)
- `att.global responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global source` (@source)

**Member of** model.teiHeaderPart

**Contained by**

- header: teiHeader

**May contain**

- core: p
- gaiji: charDecl

**linking:** ab

**Example**

```
<encodingDesc>
<p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

**Content model**

```
<content>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
<classRef key="model.pLike"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```
element encodingDesc {
```
17  THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

```xml
att.global.attributes,
   ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="omit"/>
```

**<epigraph>** (epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

**Module** textstructure

**Attributes**

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )

(att.global.rendition ( @rendition ))

(att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )

(att.global.facs ( @facs ) )

(att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )

(att.global.source ( @source ))

**Member of**

model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

**Contained by**

core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

**May contain**

core: bibl cd ct cit desc gap l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp stage
drama: castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw

**Example**

```xml
<epigraph>
   <bibl>Deut. Chap. 5.</bibl>
   <q>Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vaine, for the Lord will not hold him guiltleffe which shall take his name in vaine.</q>
</epigraph>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**
**Processing Model**

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<expan>** (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by the `transcr` module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

---

**Note**

The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The `<ex>` element provided by the `transcr` module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.
If abbreviations are expanded silently, this practice should be documented in the `<editorialDecl>`, either with a `<normalization>` element or a `<p>`.

**Example**

```xml
The address is Southmoor
<choice>
  <expan>Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

**Example**

```xml
<choice xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <expan>Imp<ex>erator</ex></expan>
</choice>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<extent>** (extent) describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of File 2.2. The File Description 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

**Module header**

**Attributes** Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))

**Member of** model.biblPart

**Contained by**

**core:** bibl
**header:** biblFull fileDesc

**May contain**

**analysis:** c, pc, w
**core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

**figures:** figure formula
Example

```xml
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

<facsimile> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Attributes

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`)
- `att.global.rendition` (`@rendition`)
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)
- `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)
- `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)
- `att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)
- `att.global.source` (`@source`)

Member of model.resource

Contained by
- `core`: teiCorpus
- `textstructure`: TEI

May contain
- `core`: graphic
- `figures`: formula
- `textstructure`: back, front
- `transcr`: surface

Example
**Example**

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
      <elementRef key="surface"/>
      <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element facsimile
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( front?, ( model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+, back? )
}
```

**<figDesc>** (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images](#)

**Module figures**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>Global attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:id</td>
<td>ID attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@n</td>
<td>Name attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:lang</td>
<td>Language attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:base</td>
<td>Base URI attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:space</td>
<td>Space attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>Rendition attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@rendition</td>
<td>Rendition attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>Linking attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@corresp</td>
<td>Correspondence attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@next</td>
<td>Next reference attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@prev</td>
<td>Previous reference attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>Analytic attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ana</td>
<td>Analytic attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>Facsimile attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@facs</td>
<td>Facsimile attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>Responsibility attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@cert</td>
<td>Certainty attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@resp</td>
<td>Responsibility attribute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>Source attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@source</td>
<td>Source attribute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contained by**

- figures: figure

**May contain**

- abbr, address, biblio, choice, cit, date, desc, email, expand, foreign, hi, label, list, listBiblio, measure, name, num, q, quote, ref, rs, stage, term, time, title
Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

Example

```xml
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblemi.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition>color: grey;font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<figure> (figure) groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [4.4. Specific Elements for Graphic Images]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: sw

145
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>
</figure>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
Processing Model

```
<model predicate="head or @rendition='simple:display'"
    behaviour="block"/>
<model behaviour="inline">
    <outputRendition> display: block; border-top: solid 1pt blue; border-bottom: solid 1pt blue; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. 2.2. The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain
header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model
<content>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
            <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
            <elementRef key="editionStmt"
                minOccurs="0"/>
            <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
            <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
            <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
                minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
            <elementRef key="notesStmt"
                minOccurs="0"/>
        </sequence>
        <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
            minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<model behaviour="title">
    <param name="content" value="titleStmt"/>
</model>
```

<floatingText> (floating text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes. [4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- `att.global` (xml:id, @a, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.attributable

Contained by analysis: 8
May contain

Example

Content model
<!-- Schema Declaration -->

```xml
<element floatingText
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,
    ( back, model.global* )?
}
```

<!-- Processing Model -->

```xml
<model behaviour="block">
<outputRendition> margin: 6pt; border: solid black 1pt; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
    (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
    (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.Facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
    (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: 8

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
    foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
    quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
    rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg
Note The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

This is heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>font-style:italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
```
<formula> (formula) contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2. Formulæ and Mathematical Expressions]

Module figures

Attributes

<att.global> (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Derived from att.notated

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: TeX Using TeX or LaTeX notation

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: §
core: abbr add addrLine author bibliScope cit corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drago:
figures: cell figure formula table
gaiji: char glyph
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: facsimile fw supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain

core: graphic hi q
figures: formula

character data

Example

<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2$</formula>

Example

<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">^2</hi></formula>

Example

<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>m</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element formula {
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { "TeX" },
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike )*}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="@rendition='simple:display'"
       behaviour="block"/>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

(front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

Module textstructure

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

Contained by
textstructure: floatingText text
transcr: facsimile

May contain
core: cb gap head lb listBibl milestone note p pb
drama: castList set
figures: figure
linking: ab anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph postscript salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer
Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the `<front>` and `<back>` elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego oculis meis vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="grc">Σίβυλλα τί Θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="grc">ἀποθανεῖν θέλω.</q>
  </quote>
</epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q></p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author’s Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons she has done so inadvertently. ...</p>
  </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
<front>
  <div type="abstract">
    <div>
      <head>BACKGROUND:</head>
      <p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head>OBJECTIVE:</head>
      <p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
    </div>
    <div>
      <head>DESIGN:</head>
      <p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed. Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department of Agriculture’s Food Security Survey Module based on eight child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed with five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m²) greater than or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level, and</p>
  </div>
</front>
```
survey year were conducted to describe associations between obesity and food insecurity.

**RESULTS:**

Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to 2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88; 95% CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.

**CONCLUSIONS:**

Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal food-insecurity measures may give different results than aggregate food-insecurity measures in children.
Schema Declaration

```xml
<sequence>
  <content>
    <element front
      {
      att.global.attributes,
      {
      ( model.frontPart | model.pLike | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
      {
      ( model.div1Like, ( model.div1Like | model.frontPart | model.global )* 
      )
      | {
      model.divLike, ( model.divLike | model.frontPart | model.global )* 
      )
      
      ( model.divBottom, ( model.divBottom | model.global )* )?
      }?
      }
    }
    </element>
  </content>
</sequence>
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<fw>
(forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module transcr

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Att.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>attributes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global rendition</td>
<td>rendition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global linking</td>
<td>linking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global analytic</td>
<td>analytic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global facs</td>
<td>facs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global responsibility</td>
<td>responsibility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.cert</td>
<td>cert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.resp</td>
<td>resp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.source</td>
<td>source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.place</td>
<td>place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.type</td>
<td>type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.subtype</td>
<td>subtype</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@type</td>
<td>type classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Derived from att.typed

Status

Recommended

Datatype

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Datatype</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td>classified material encoded according to some useful typology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Analysis</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbr, add, addrLine, address, author, bibl, biblScope, cit, corr, date, del, editor, email, expan, foreign, head, hi, item, label, list, listBibl, measure, name, note, num, orig, p, pubPlace, publisher, q, quote, ref, reg, resp, rs, sic, sp, speaker, stage, term, time, title, unclear, drama, actor, castGroup, castItem, castList, role, roleDesc, set, figures, cell, figure, table, header, change, classCode, distributor, edition, extent, language, licence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

drama:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drama</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>actor, castGroup, castItem, castList, role, roleDesc, set</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

figures:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figures</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cell, figure, table</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

header:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Header</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>change, classCode, distributor, edition, extent, language, licence</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

linking:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Linking</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbr, seg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

namesdates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Namesdates</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

156
May contain

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually
more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the rend
attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes
from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the
running heads are of paramount importance.

Example

<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fw
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  attribute type { text },{,}
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::p or ancestor::ab"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```
<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. 5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes

Module gaiji

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping

header: change distributor edition extent idno licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Note The name g is short for gaiji, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

Example

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier ctlig like the following:

<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>

Example

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier per-glyph as follows:

<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- .... -->
</glyph>

Content model <content> <textNode/> </content>

Schema Declaration
Processing Model

```
<model predicate="not(text())"
   behaviour="glyph">
   <param name="uri" value="@ref"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes

- **att.global** (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- **att.global.rendition** (@rendition)
- **att.global.linking** (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- **att.global.analytic** (@ana)
- **att.global.facs** (@facs)
- **att.global.responsibility** (@cert, @resp)
- **att.global.source** (@source)
- **att.timed** (@start, @end)
- **att.editLike**
- **att.dimensions** (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)

@reason (reason) gives the reason for omission

- **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace
  - **Suggested values include:** cancelled (cancelled)
    - deleted (deleted)
    - editorial (editorial) for features omitted from transcription due to editorial policy
    - illegible (illegible)
    - inaudible (inaudible)
    - irrelevant (irrelevant)
    - sampling (sampling)

@agent (agent) in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

- **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`
  - **Sample values include:** rubbing (rubbing) damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
    - mildew (mildew) damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
    - smoke (smoke) damage results from smoke

Member of `model.global.edit`
The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```xml
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```xml
<del>
  <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```xml
<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1"/>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```xml
<glyph>

element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
  list
  {
    "cancelled"
    | "deleted"
    | "editorial"
    | "illegible"
    | "inaudible"
    | "irrelevant"
    | "sampling"
  }
  }
  attribute agent { text }?,
  desc?
}
</glyph>

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="desc" behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="@extent" behaviour="inline">
<param name="content" value="@extent"/>
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[..';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: '..]';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition>color: grey;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: '[...';</outputRendition>
</model>

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs

Module gaiji

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

Contained by

- gaiji: charDecl

May contain

- desc, graphic, note
- figures: figure, formula

161
gaiji: | glyphName | mapping |
---|---|---|
Example

```xml
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <localProp name="Name" value="LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE"/>
  <localProp name="entity" value="rstroke"/>
  <figure>
    <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
  </figure>
</glyph>
```

### Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="glyphName"/>
    <elementRef key="charProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unicodeProp"/>
    <elementRef key="unihanProp"/>
    <elementRef key="localProp"/>
    <elementRef key="mapping"/>
    <elementRef key="figure"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

### Schema Declaration

```xml
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    glyphName | charProp | unicodeProp | unihanProp | localProp | mapping
  }
}
```

---

**<glyphName>** (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.

[5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

**Deprecated** will be removed on 2022-02-15

**Module** gaiji

**Attributes**

- att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

**Contained by**

- gaiji: glyph

**May contain** Character data only

**Note** For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an Ideographic Description Sequence (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is
recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of `<glyphName>`s to facilitate data exchange.

Example

```xml
<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>
```

Content model `<content> <TextNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration `element glyphName { att.global.attributes, text }`

---

<graphic> (graphic) indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>@xml:id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@n</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:lang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:base</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@xml:space</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@rendition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@corresp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@next</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@prev</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@ana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@facs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@cert</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@resp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@source</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@width</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@height</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@scale</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>@mimeType</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Member of** `model.graphicLike`

**Contained by**

- `analysis:`
- `drama:`
- `figures:`
- `gaiji:`
- `header:`
- `linking:`
- `textstructure:`
- `transcr:`
- `verse:`

**May contain**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>desc</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The `mimeType` attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the `url` attribute.

Within the body of a text, a `<graphic>` element indicates the presence of a graphic component in the source itself. Within the context of a `<facsimile>` or `<sourceDoc>` element, however, a `<graphic>` element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

```xml
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
```
foreground, and a
series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>

Example

<facsimile>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page1.png"/>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>

Content model

<content>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attributes,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  model.descLike*
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="graphic">
  <param name="url" value="@url"/>
  <param name="width" value="@width"/>
  <param name="height" value="@height"/>
  <param name="scale" value="@scale"/>
  <param name="title" value="desc"/>
</model>

<group> (group) contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of
distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose,
for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4.
Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
Example

<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->

<!-- biographical notice by editor -->

<!-- first poem -->

<!-- second poem -->

<!-- end of Pope section-->

Content model

```
<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divTop"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="text"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="text"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
<classRef key="model.divBottom" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
(element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
})
```
\[
\begin{aligned}
&\text{( model.divTop | model.global )*}, \\
&(\text{ ( text | group )}, \text{ ( text | group | model.global )* }), \\
&\text{model.divBottom*}
\end{aligned}
\]

**Processing Model** `<model behaviour="block"/>`

<h> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.typed` (@type, @subtype)
- `att.placement` (@place)
- `att.written` (@hand)

**Member of** model.headLike model.pLike.front

**Contained by**

core: lg listBibl
drama: castGroup castList set
figures: figure table
namesdates: listPerson listPlace place
textstructure: argument back body div front group postscript

**May contain**

- analysis: c p s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

**Character data**

**Note** The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>` occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div>` is the title of that chapter or section.

**Example** The most common use for the `<head>` element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual...
in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a `<trailer>` as in this example:

```xml
<div n="I" type="book">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
    <div2 type="section">
        <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
        <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
        <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>
        <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>
    </div2>
</div1>
```

*Example.* When headings are not inline with the running text (see e.g. the heading "Secunda conclusio") they might however be encoded as if. The actual placement in the source document can be captured with the `place` attribute:

```xml
<div type="subsection">
    <head place="margin">Secunda conclusio</head>
    <p>
        <hi rend="large">Potencia: habitus: et actus: recipiunt speciem ab objectis</hi>.
    </p>
    <p>
        Probatur sic. Omne importans necessariam habitudinem ad proprium [...]
    </p>
</div>
```

*Example* The `<head>` element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```xml
<head>Connectives</head>
<item>above</item>
<item>accordingly</item>
<item>across from</item>
<item>adjacent to</item>
<item>again</item>
</list>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <textNode/>
        <elementRef key="lg"/>
        <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
        <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    </alternate>
</content>
```
<classRef key="model.lLike"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text
    | lg | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.lLike | model.global
  }
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="parent::figure"
  behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::table"
  behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::lg"
  behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::list"
  behaviour="block">
<outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::div"
  behaviour="heading">
<param name="level"
  value="count(ancestor::div)"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="block"/>

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases [3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @a, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) ) ( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) )
( att.global.analytic (@ana) ) ( att.global.facs (@facs) ) ( att.global.responsibility
( @cert, @resp ) ) ( att.global.source (@source) ) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: 8 w
May contain:

Example:

<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi> that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant, in consideration of the said intended marriage ...

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, att.written.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="@rendition"
  behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>font-style: italic;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="not(@rendition)"
```
<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

### 13.3.1. Basic Principles

#### 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.

#### 2.2.5. The Series Statement

#### 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information

**Module header**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>(@rendition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>(@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>(@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>(@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>(@cert, @resp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>(@source)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.sortable</td>
<td>(@sortKey)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datatable</td>
<td>(calendar, @period)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.datatable.w3c</td>
<td>(@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>(type, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

- Derived from att.typed
- Status Optional
- Datatype teidata.enumerated

**Suggested values include:**

- **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

- **ISSN** International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

- **DOI** Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

- **URI** Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.

- **VIAF** A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

- **ESTC** English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

- **OCLC** OCLC control number (record number) for the union catalog record in WorldCat, a union catalog for member libraries in the Online Computer Library Center global cooperative.
Note: `<idno>` should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for `type` on `<idno>` are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

**Example**

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a `<glyph>` or `<char>` element referenced here as `#sym`.

**Content model**

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
}
(imprimatur) contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
   (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c p c s w
core: abbr add address bibli cb choice cit corr date del desc email expand foreign gap
   graphic hi label lb lg list ListBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
   ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor seg

namesdates: listPerson listPlace

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

Example

<imprimatur>Licensed and entered according to Order.</imprimatur>

Content model

<content>
   <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
<item> (item) contains one component of a list.  

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Contained by
core: list
May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi ll label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: ab anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global n attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the n attribute on the <item> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the <label> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the <label> element, not n.

Example

<list rend="numbered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
<keywords> (keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.faces (@faces)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.faces (@faces)) (att.global.source (@source))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass
May contain core: list term

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a <term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which each <term> appears within an <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the scheme attribute.

Example

```xml
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
  <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
  <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

Example

```xml
<keywords>
  <term>Fermented beverages</term>
  <term>Central Andes</term>
  <term>Schinus molle</term>
  <term>Molle beer</term>
  <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
  <term>Ethnography</term>
  <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model
**Schema Declaration**

```
<content>
<alternate>
  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="list"/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

**element keywords**

```
att.global.attributes, attribute scheme { text }?, ( term+ | list )
```

---

(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](#) 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents

**Module core**

**Attributes**

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source ( @source)) att.metrical ( @rhyme) att.fragmentable ( @part)
```

**Member of** model.Like

**Contained by**

```
core: add corr del head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
  signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme
```

**May contain**

```
analysis: abc def ghi
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
  graphic hi label lb list listBibl measure milestone name note num origโปรด q quote ref
  reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
hagi: 
gaiji: 
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
```

---

175
Example

<argument>
  <l>With sighs and tears her love he doth desire,</l>
  <l>Since Cupid hath his senses set on fire;</l>
  <l>His torment and his pain to her he shews,</l>
  <l>With all his proteftations and his vows:</l>
  <l>At last she yields to grant him some relief,</l>
  <l>And make him joyful after all his grief.</l>
</argument>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l. = current())]]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.metrical.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*  
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <outputRendition> margin-left: 1em; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<label> (label) contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.8. Lists]

Module core Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
Example. Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global xml:lang attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```xml
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
</list>
```
Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon’s Autobiography. In this usage the \texttt{<label> } element is synonymous with the \texttt{n} attribute on the \texttt{<item>} element:

\begin{verbatim}
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2)</label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
\end{verbatim}

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

\begin{verbatim}
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</quote>
</item>
</list>
\end{verbatim}

Note that the \texttt{<label> } might also appear within the \texttt{<item>} rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

\begin{verbatim}
<list>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
\end{verbatim}

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the \texttt{<label> } element appears within the \texttt{<p>} or \texttt{<lg>} element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

\begin{verbatim}
<p>[...]</p>
</verbatim>
<lb/>arrêté, quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puissance maritale
entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/>comformé. Depuis la conforma-
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft foubs
<lb/>la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-
vue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
cas, la femme, qui a efpoué vn en-
fant de famille, eft foubs la puiffance
[...]</p>

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the type attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element label{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}>
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<langUsage>(language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.profileDescPart
Contained by header: profileDesc
May contain core: p
header: language
linking: ab

Example

```xml
<language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
```
Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
language
```

&langUsage { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | language+ ) }

```
<language>
(language) characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a
text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]
```

Module header

Attributes Attributes

| att.global | ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space ) |
| @rendition | ( @rendition ) |
| @corresp | ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) |
| @corresp | ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) |
| @ana | ( @ana ) |
| @facs | ( @facs ) |
| @cert | ( @cert, @resp ) |
| @source | ( @source ) |

@ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47
which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and
which is referenced by the global xml:lang attribute.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.language

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses
this language.

Status Optional

Datatype nonNegativeInteger

Contained by: langUsage

May contain core: abbr address cb choice date email expant foreign gap hi lb measure milestone name note num pb q ref rs term time title

figures: figure

header: idno

linking: anchor

tagdocs: code

transcr: fw subst

caracter data

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied
as content for the element.
Example

```xml
<langUsage>
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  attribute usage { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited
}
```

May contain Empty element.
Note By convention, `<lb>` elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The `n` attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next `<lb>` element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the `<l>` element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The `type` attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes `break`, `ed`, or `edRef` should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```xml
<l><lb ed="1674"/> Of Mans First Disobedience, <lb ed="1667"/> and <lb ed="1667"/> the Fruit</l>
<l><lb ed="1667 1674"/> Of that Forbidden Tree, whose mortal tast</l>
<l> Brought Death into the World, <lb ed="1667"/> and all <lb ed="1674"/> our woe, </l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The `break` attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```xml
<titlePart>
  <lb> With Additions, ne. <lb break="no"/> ver before Printed. </lb>
</titlePart>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/> </content>`

Schema Declaration

```
<element lb {
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.edition.attributes,  
  att.spanning.attributes,  
  att.breaking.attributes,  
  empty
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="break" 
  useSourceRendition="true"> 
  <param name="type" value="line"/>
  <param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
```

`<lg>` (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. `[3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse][3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama][7.2.5. Speech Contents]`
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global rendition (@rendition)) (att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global source (@source)) att.divLike (@org, @sample)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
(att.global.source (@source))
(att.divLike (@org, @sample))
(att.fragmentable (@part))
(att.typed (@type, @subtype))

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by
core: add del corr head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain
core: cb desc gap head label lb lg milestone note pb stage
figures: figure
linking: anchor
textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer
transcr: fw

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

Example

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>

<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
</lg>

<lg type="free">
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>

<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>

Schematron

<s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]">Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. </s:report>

Content model

<!DOCTYPE tei-system[Content]>
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
<schema>

<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>

<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
</alternate>

<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
  <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

<element lg {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
    ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
    ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*)
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"/>

<licence>
  contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
</licence>

Module header

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.liking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facts)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by header: availability

May contain analysis: c pc w
<list>

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
graphic hi il label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q
quote ref rs sic sp stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: ab anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme
character data

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the
text in question. The target attribute may be used to reference a full version of the
licence. The when, notBefore, notAfter, from or to attributes may be used in
combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

Example

<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing">
Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>

Example

<availability>
<licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
notBefore="2013-01-01">
<p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
applies to this document.</p>
<p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
</licence>
</availability>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element licence
{ att.global.attributes, att.pointing.attributes, att.datable.attributes, macro.specialPara}

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.8. Lists]
Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed
(type, @subtype)

@type (type) describes the nature of the items in the list.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: gloss (gloss) each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a <label> element preceding the list item.

index (index) each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.

instructions (instructions) each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.

litany (litany) each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.

syllogism (syllogism) each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.

Note Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of type on <list> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the rend or style attributes for these aspects of a list, while using type for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.

The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: abstract change keywords licence rendition revisionDesc sourceDesc tagUsage
linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb desc gap head item label lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener
postscript salute signed trailer

186
transcr: fw

Note  May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example

<list rend="numbered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
      <list rend="bulleted">
        <item>rings on his fingers</item>
        <item>bells on his toes</item>
      </list>
  </item>
</list>

Example

<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
  <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
  <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
  <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>

Example

<list type="litany" rend="simple">
  <item>God save us from drought.</item>
  <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
  <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
  <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>

Example  The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

<div1 type="section"
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence.  
      <list rend="numbered">
        <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief with his wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that account – or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
        <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
        <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item>
        <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with his wergild, or to bring him back there.</item>
        <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild, whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.

Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.

And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.

And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.

Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have done, if he had refused him justice.

And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his wergild on the first occasion; if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.

And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to the same.

Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the sign of the Holy Cross.

<list rend="simple">
  <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
  <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with devout will.</item>
  <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
  <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
</list>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']">
  <sch:assert test="tei:label">The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="item"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="headLabel" minOccurs="0"/>
        <elementRef key="headItem" minOccurs="0"/>
        <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
          <elementRef key="label"/>
        </sequence>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<elementRef key="item"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
  },
  ( model.divTop | model.global | desc* )*,
  ( item, model.global* )+
  | ( headLabel?,
    headItem?,
    ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
  ),
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="@rendition"
  behaviour="list" useSourceRendition="true"/>
<model predicate="not(@rendition)"
  behaviour="list"/>
```

```
<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. 3.12.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements
```

Module core

```
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@faces)) (att.global.responsibility)
```
<listBibl>

(@cert, @resp) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed

Member of model.biblLike model.frontPart

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc head hi item l listBibl note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem
sic stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy
linking: ab seg
dates: person place

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript
salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl cb desc head l listBibl milestone pb
header: biblFull
linking: anchor
transcr: fw

Example

<listBibl>

<head>Works consulted</head>
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
</bibl>
<biblStruct>
<analytic>
<title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
</analytic>
<monogr>
<title>The Penny Histories</title>
<author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
<imprint>
<publisher>OUP</publisher>
<date>1968</date>
</imprint>
</monogr>
</biblStruct>
</listBibl>

Content model

<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.headLike"
minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.milestoneLike"
minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1"
maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```xml
<element listBibl {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    ( model.headLike*,
      desc*,
      ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )*,
      ( model.biblLike+, ( model.milestoneLike | relation | listRelation )* )+ )
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="bibl" behaviour="list"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<listChange>** groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.6. The Revision Description](11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions)

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
- (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.analytic (@ana))
- (att.global.facs (@facs))
- (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
- (att.global.source (@source))
- att sortable (@sortKey)
- att typed (@type, @subtype)

**@ordered** indicates whether the ordering of its child **<change>** elements is to be considered significant or not.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.truthValue

**Default** true
<listChange>

May contain:
- creation
- listChange
- revisionDesc

core:
- desc

header:
- change
- listChange

Note: When this element appears within the <creation> element it documents the set of
revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text.
When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes
made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further
                     revisions by Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand, probably at a later stage</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="listChange"/>
      <elementRef key="change"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ordered { text }?,
  ( desc*, { listChange | change }+ )
}
```
<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

13.3.2. The Person Element

15.2. Contextual Information

2.4. The Profile

Description

15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
corpus: particDesc
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage
linking: ab seg
namesdates: listPerson
textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimitur postscript salute

signed titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain

core: desc head

namesdates: listPerson person

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

Example

<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
  <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
  <ListRelation>
    <relation type="personal" name="spouse">
      mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/
    </relation>
  </ListRelation>
</listPerson>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
Schema Declaration

```xml
<elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.personLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listPerson" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
<elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  {
    model.headLike*,
    desc*,
    ( relation | listRelation )*,
    ( ( model.personLike | listPerson )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
  }
}

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
  att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by:
core: add corr del desc head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear
corpus: settingDesc
drama: castList set
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

figures: cell figDesc figure
header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage
linking: ab seg
namesdates: listPlace place

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
signed titlePart trailer
transcr: supplied
verse: rhyme

May contain
core: desc head

namesdates: listPlace place

Example

```xml
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.placeLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listPlace" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="relation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
        <elementRef key="listRelation" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
<listPrefixDef>

(element listPlace
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.sortable.attributes,
    {
        model.headLike*,
        desc*,
        ( relation | listRelation )*,
        ( ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+, ( relation | listRelation )* )+
    }
})

</listPrefixDef>

(list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. 

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
- (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

**Member of** model.encodingDescPart

**Contained by**

- header: encodingDesc listPrefixDef

**May contain**

- core: desc

**Example**

In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a `<p>` element.

```xml
<prefixDef ident="psn" matchPattern="([A-Z]+)" replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
    <p>Private URIs using the `<code>psn</code>` prefix are pointers to `<gi>person</gi>` elements in the personography.xml file. For example, `<code>psn:MDH</code>` dereferences to `<code>personography.xml#MDH</code>`.
</p>
</prefixDef>

<prefixDef ident="bibl" matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)" replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
    <p>Private URIs using the `<code>bibl</code>` prefix can be expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
</p>
</prefixDef>

</listPrefixDef>

**Content model**

```
<content>
```
<sequence>
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="prefixDef"/>
    <elementRef key="listPrefixDef"/>
  </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>

<measure>
  <character mapping> contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.
</measure>

<example>
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard"></mapping>
</example>

<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>

<measure>
  <character measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.
</measure>

<example>
<measure value="1000">1000 pounds</measure>
</example>
Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.measure (@unit, @unitRef, @quantity, @commodity)) att.measurement (@type, @subtype)

@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.
  Derived from att.measured
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by
  analysis: analysis
    core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan
      foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pb place publisher q
      quote ref reg rep res s sic speaker stage term time title unclear
    drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
    figures: cell figDesc
    header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
      rendition tagUsage
    linking: ab seg
    textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
      imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
    transcr: fw supplied
    verse: rhyme

May contain
  analysis: analysis
    core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
      measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg res s sic term time title
      unclear
    figures: figure formula
    gaiji: g
    header: idno
    linking: anchor seg
    tagdocs: code
    textstructure: floatingText
    transcr: fw subst supplied
    verse: rhyme
  character data

Example: This example references a definition of a measurement unit declared in the TEI header:

```xml
<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh
</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area" unitRef="#merk">2 <unit>merks</unit> of old extent</measure>
```
<!-- In the TEI Header: -->
<encodingDesc>
  <unitDecl>
    <unitDef xml:id="merk" type="area">
      <label>merk</label>
      <placeName ref="#Scotland"/>
      <desc>A merk was an area of land determined variably by its agricultural productivity.</desc>
    </unitDef>
  </unitDecl>
</encodingDesc>

Example

<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
  commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count"
  commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
  commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  attribute type { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

Processing Model

<milestone>

<milestone> (milestone) marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core Attributes

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
att.global.rendition (@rendition)
att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs)
att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
att.global.source (@source)
att.milestoneUnit (@unit)
att.typed (@type, @subtype)
att.edition (@ed, @edRef)
att.spanning (@spanTo)
att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by analysis: s w
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit cori date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label lg listBibl measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg res rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
names: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Note For this element, the global n attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which <milestone> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model `<content> <empty/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```xml
element milestone {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.edition.attributes,
    att.spanning.attributes,
    att.breaking.attributes,
    empty
}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

`<name>` (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. 3.6.1. Referring

Strings

Module core

Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.faces (@face)) (att.global.responsibility
(at cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.personal (@full, @sort)) (att.naming
(at role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@ref)) (att.datable.3 (at calendar, @period)
(at.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.editLike
(~~~, @subtype))
@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: person
  forename
  surname
  personGenName
  personRoleName
  personAddName
  nameLink
  org
  country
  placeGeog
  place

Member of model.nameLike.agent, model.personPart

Contained by

analysis:
  core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email
  expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
  quota ref reg respStmnt rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
  drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
  figures: cell figDesc
  header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
  rendition tagUsage
  linking: ab seg
  namesdates: person place
  textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
  transcr: fw supplied
  verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis:
  core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
  measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quota ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
  figures: figure formula
  gaiji: g
  header: idno
  linking: anchor seg
  tagdocs: code
  textstructure: floatingText
  transcr: fw subst supplied
  verse: rhyme

character data
Note  Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with `<persName>`, `<placeName>`, or `<orgName>`, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element name  
  {
    att.global.attributes, 
    att.personal.attributes, 
    att.datable.attributes, 
    att.editLike.attributes, 
    att.typed.attribute.subtype, 
    attribute type  
    {
      "person" 
      | "forename" 
      | "surname" 
      | "personGenName" 
      | "personRoleName" 
      | "personAddName" 
      | "nameLink" 
      | "org" 
      | "country" 
      | "placeGeog" 
      | "place"
    }?,
    macro.phraseSeq
  }
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

<namespace> (namespace) supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

```
Attributes
  att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))
  @name specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.
```

Status Required

Datatype teidata.namespace

Contained by: tagsDecl
May contain

header: tagUsage

Example

```xml
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gie="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used only to mark English words italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <elementRef key="tagUsage" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element namespace { att.global.attributes, attribute name { text }, tagUsage+ }
```

---

<note> (note) contains a note or annotation. 3.9.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes Statement 3.12.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.placement (@place) att.pointing
(@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand)
att.anchoring (@anchored, @targetEnd)

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item i label lc list measure name note num orig p pubPlace
publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
gaiji: char glyph

header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence notesStmt

linking: ab seg

namesdates: person place

textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur

opener: postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied surface zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the\npainterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"
resp="#MDMH">
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two\ndistinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,\nthe other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid\nconfusion, they have been distinguished in English as\n<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and\n<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.\n</note> style of the\nDutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this\npsychological significance.

<!-- elsewhere in the document -->
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
<br>translation from German to English</br>
<br>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</br>
</respStmt>

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for\nexample by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header.\n
Example The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to\nmark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorak b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the\nfamily during the second half of the eleventh century,\n<note n="126" anchored="true"> The\nalleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,\na reference to\nJudah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from\nGeniza documents\npublished by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be\nreconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered\unnecessary to record the note numbers.\n
Content model
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  att.anchoring.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

Processing Model

<model predicate="@place" behaviour="note">
  <param name="place" value="@place"/>
  <param name="label" value="@n"/>
</model>
<model predicate="parent::div and not(@place)"
  behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition>margin-left: 10px;margin-right: 10px;
  font-size:smaller;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model predicate="not(@place)"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content:" [";</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content:" "]";</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition font-size:small;</outputRendition>
</model>

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information
about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic
description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement | 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
            (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
            (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
            (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
header:  biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core:  note relatedItem

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.
Example

<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
</notesStmt>
<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form.  

3.6.3. Numbers and Measures

Module core

Attributes  
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)  
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global/linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))  
  (att.global/analytic (@ana)) (att.global/facs ( @facs)) (att.global/responsibility)  
  (@cert, @resp) (att.global/source ( @source)) att/typed 

@type indicates the type of numeric value.

Derived from att/typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: cardinal absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5

  ordinal ordinal number, e.g. 21st

  fraction fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters

  percentage a percentage

Note If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.

@value supplies the value of the number in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

Values a numeric value.

Note The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype teidata.numeric.
May contain:

- **analysis:** c pc w
- **core:** abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expen foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear
- **figures:** figure formula gaiji: g
- **header:** idno
- **linking:** anchor seg
- **tagdocs:** code
- **textstructure:** floatingText
- **transcr:** fw subst supplied
- **verse:** rhyme

**Character data**

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
  attribute value { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
(opener) groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions

Module textstructure

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attributes</th>
<th>att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(att.global.source ( @source)) att.written ( @hand)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by
core: lg list
drama: castList
textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cor date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb q ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: argument byline dateline epigraph salute signed

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>

Example

<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <TextNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="argument"/>
</content>
```
<elementRef key="byline"/>
<elementRef key="dateline"/>
<elementRef key="epigraph"/>
<elementRef key="salute"/>
<elementRef key="signed"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```
element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  {
    text | model.gLike | model.phrase | argument | byline | dateline | epigraph
  }
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. 3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization

Critical Apparatus

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition)) ( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
( att.global.analytic ( @ana)) ( att.global.facs ( @facs)) ( att.global.responsibility)
( @cert, @resp)) ( att.global.source ( @source))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc sw

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan
  foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
  quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
  imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc sw

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
  graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
  ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList
Example: If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, 
\(<\textit{orig}>\) may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>
```

Example: More usually, an \(<\textit{orig}>\) will be combined with a regularized form within a \(<\textit{choice}>\) element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice></l>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
<macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element orig { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent } />
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

\(\textsc{p}\) (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs] [7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes

*att.global* (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

\(\text{att.global.rendition} (@\textit{rendition})\) \(\text{att.global.linking} (@\textit{corresp}, @\textit{next}, @\textit{prev})\)

\(\text{att.global.analytic} (@\textit{ana})\) \(\text{att.global.facs} (@\textit{facs})\) \(\text{att.global.responsibility} (@\textit{cert}, @\textit{resp})\)

\(\text{att.global.source} (@\textit{source})\) \(\text{att.fragmentable} (@\textit{part})\) \(\text{att.written} (@\textit{hand})\)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

*core: item, note, q, quote, sp, stage*

*corpus: particDesc, settingDesc*
Example

<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe," she said.</p>

<p><q>What have you done?</q></p>

<p><q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time," replied Thjostolf.</q></p>

<p><q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead," she said.</q></p>

<p><q>Yes," said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for me."</q></q></p>

Schematron <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(/tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report>

Content model

<content>
(participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]

Module corpus

Attributes

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{att.global} (\texttt{@xml:id}, \texttt{@id}, \texttt{@xml:lang}, \texttt{@xml:base}, \texttt{@xml:space})
  \item \texttt{att.global.rendition} (\texttt{@rendition})
  \item \texttt{att.global.linking} (\texttt{@corresp}, \texttt{@next}, \texttt{@prev})
  \item \texttt{att.global.analytic} (\texttt{@ana})
  \item \texttt{att.global.facs} (\texttt{@facs})
  \item \texttt{att.global.responsibility} (\texttt{@cert}, \texttt{@resp})
  \item \texttt{att.global.source} (\texttt{@source})
\end{itemize}

Member of \texttt{model.profileDescPart}

Contained by header: \texttt{profileDesc}

May contain

\begin{itemize}
  \item \texttt{p}
  \item \texttt{ab}
\end{itemize}

namesdates: \texttt{listPerson} \texttt{person}

Example

\begin{verbatim}
<particDesc>
  <listPerson>
    <person xml:id="Trinder" sex="m">
      <p>
        <name type="surname">Trinder</name>
        <name type="forename">William</name>
        <name type="forename">Martin</name>
      </p>
    </person>
    <person xml:id="Leland" sex="m">
      <p>
        <name type="surname">Leland</name>
        <name type="forename">Thomas</name>
      </p>
    </person>
  </listPerson>
</particDesc>
\end{verbatim}
Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
    <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
    <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element particDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personLike | listPerson | listOrg )+ )
}
```

<pb> (page beginning) marks the beginning of a new page in a paginated document.

3.11.3. Milestone Elements

Module core

Attributes

```
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space )
att.global.rendition ( @rendition )
att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev )
att.global.analytic ( @ana )
att.global.facs ( @facs )
att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp )
att.global.source ( @source )
att.typed ( @type, @subtype )
attribution ( @ed, @edRef )
attribution ( @spanTo )
att.breaking ( @break )
```

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

```
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit corr date del editor email
expan foreign head hi item label lg list listBibl measure name note num orig p
pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castGroup castItem castList role roleDesc set
figures: cell figure table
header: change classCode distributor edition extent language licence
linking: ab seg
namesdates: person
textstructure: argument back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate
docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group imprimatur
opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: fw subst supplied surface zone
verse: rhyme
```
May contain Empty element

Note A `<pb>` element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the `<pb>` element itself.

The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed, or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```xml
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here --> ... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the facs attribute

```xml
<body>
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
  <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is encoded here -->
  <p> <!-- ... --> </p>
  <!-- ... -->
  <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
  <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
  <p> <!-- ... --> </p>
</body>
```

Content model `<content> <empty/> </content>`

Schema Declaration

```
<content> <empty/></content>
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="break" useSourceRendition="true">
  <param name="type" value=""page""/>
  <param name="label" values="(concat(if(@n) then concat(@n, ', ' ) else '') , if(@facs) then concat('@', @facs) else '' ) "/>
  <outputRendition> display: block; margin-left: 4pt; color: grey; float: right; </outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="before"> content: '{Page ';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after"> content: ']' </outputRendition>
</model>
```
(punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.2. Below the Word Level 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

Module analysis

Attributes: 

\( <pc> \)

att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
\( \) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
\( \) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic (@lemma, @lemmaRef)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: 

- strong the punctuation mark is a word separator
- weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator
- inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.truthValue

Member of: model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by: 

analysis:

core:

figures:

header:

linking:

textstructure:

transcr:

verse:

May contain:

analysis:

core:

gaiji:

transcr:

character data

Example
Example: Example encoding of the German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub., encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILAILW.

Example encoding of the German sentence Wir fahren in den Urlaub., encoded with attributes from att.linguistic discussed in section AILAILW.

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="c"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.linguistic.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { text }?,
  attribute pre { text }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit )*
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

(person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

Attributes

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)
- `att.editLike`
- `att.sortable` (@sortKey)
- `@role` specifies a primary role or classification for the person.
Status  Optional
Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Note  Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

@sex  specifies the sex of the person.
Status  Optional
Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

Note  Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard’s sex property http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 Representation of Human Sexes http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH’s Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection.

@age  specifies an age group for the person.
Status  Optional
Datatype  teidata.enumerated

Note  Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification.

Member of  model.personLike
Contained by  corpus: particDesc
namesdates: listPerson
May contain  core: bibl ch gap lb listBibl milestone name note p pb figures: figure header: biblFull idno linking: ab anchor transcr: fw

Example

```xml
<person sex="1">
</person>
```
<person xml:id="Stevenson" sex="m" role="writer">
  <p>
    <name type="surname">Stevenson</name>
    <name type="forename">Robert</name>
    <name type="forename">Louis</name>
  </p>
</person>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  </alternate>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element person
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { + } }?,
  attribute sex { list { + } }?,
  attribute age { text }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global | ptr ) )* }
```

<place> (place) contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
att.editLike att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.placeLike

Contained by corpus: settingDesc

namesdates: listPlace place

May contain core: bibl desc head label listBibl name note p

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab

namesdates: listPlace place
Example

```xml
<place xml:id="Hereford">
  <p>
    <name type="place">Hereford</name>
    <name type="country">England</name>
  </p>
</place>

Example

```xml
<place xml:id="Lithuania">
  <p>
    <name type="country">Lithuania</name>
    <name type="country" xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</name>
  </p>
  <place xml:id="Vilnius">
    <p>
      <name>Vilnius</name>
    </p>
  </place>
  <place xml:id="Kaunas">
    <p>
      <name>Kaunas</name>
    </p>
  </place>
</place>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.headLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
        <elementRef key="idno"/>
        <elementRef key="ptr"/>
        <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
        <elementRef key="link"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
        <elementRef key="idno"/>
        <elementRef key="ptr"/>
        <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
        <elementRef key="link"/>
      </alternate>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.listPlace"/>
      <elementRef key="idno"/>
      <elementRef key="ptr"/>
      <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
      <elementRef key="link"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration
contains a postscript, e.g. to a letter. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list
fig:ure table
textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

core: bib cb rit desc gap head | label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
stage
drama: castList
fig:ure table
head: bibFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: closer floatingText opener postscript signed trailer
transcr: fw

Example

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
<closer>
  <salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
  <signed>Seymour</signed>
</closer>
<postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
</postscript>
</div>

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.divTopPart"/>
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.common"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
<element postscript{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  ( (model.global | model.divTopPart)*,
    model.common,
    (model.global | model.common)*,
    (model.divBottomPart, model.global*)*
  )
}
```

Processing Model

```
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<prefixDef> (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in teidata.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header

```
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
```
@ident supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

**Status** Required

**Datatype** teidata.prefix

**Note** The value is limited to teidata.prefix so that it may be mapped directly to a URI prefix.

**Contained by** listPrefixDef

**May contain** core: p

**linking:** ab

**Note** The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of xml:base in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by [XML Base].

**Example**

```xml
<prefixDef ident="ref"
  matchPattern="[a-z]+"
  replacementPattern=".././references/references.xml#$1">
  <p>In the context of this project, private URIs with the prefix "ref" point to <div> elements in the project's global references.xml file.</p>
</prefixDef>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { text },
  model.pLike*
}
```

(text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]
Attributes Attributes `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
`att.global.rendition` (@rendition) `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
`att.global.analytic` (@ana) `att.global.facs` (@facs) `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp) `att.global.source` (@source)

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain corpus: particDesc settingDesc

header: abstract creation langUsage textClass

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of `<profileDesc>` unless these are documenting multiple texts.

Example

```xml
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <date notAfter="1623"/>
  </creation>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="eng">English</language>
  </langUsage>
  <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 16th century</term>
    <term type="genre">Plays -- England -- 17th century</term>
    <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
    <term type="genre">Comedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
    <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 16th century</term>
    <term type="genre">Tragedies -- England -- 17th century</term>
  </keywords>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.profileDescPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, model.profileDescPart* }`
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="omit"/>
```

`<projectDesc>` (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]
<pubPlace>

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by
header: encodingDesc

May contain
core: p
linking: ab

Example

&lt;projectDesc&gt;
 &lt;p&gt;Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June 1990.&lt;/p&gt;
&lt;/projectDesc&gt;

Content model

&lt;content&gt;
 &lt;classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"&gt;
   &lt;/classRef&gt;
&lt;/content&gt;

Schema Declaration

element projectDesc { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }

&lt;pubPlace&gt; (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. 3.12.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information

Module core
Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
- att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by
core: bib1
header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint

May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Example

```xml
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader" behaviour="omit">
  <desc>Omit if located in teiHeader. </desc>
</model>
```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

Contained by

- header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

- core: address date p pubPlace publisher ref
- header: availability distributor idno
- linking: ab
Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the
class model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail rather
than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure
that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance
requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address,
identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher,
distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>

Example

<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Zea Books</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Lincoln, NE</pubPlace>
  <date>2017</date>
  <availability>
    <p>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons
    Attribution 4.0 International license.</p>
  </availability>
  <ptr target="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/>
</publicationStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
      <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (}
<publisher> (publisher) provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.12.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
| att.global.rendition (@rendition) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
| att.global.analytic (@ana) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by
core: bibl
header: publicationStmt
textstructure: docImprint

May contain
analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expn foreign gap graphic hi lb
| measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title
| unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```xml
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```
Schema Declaration

```xml
element publisher
{att.global.attributes,
 att.canonical.attributes,
 macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="ancestor::teiHeader"
 behaviour="omit">
 <desc>Omit if located in teiHeader. </desc>
</model>
```

(quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used.

[3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
             (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
             (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
             (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom)
             (att.ascribed (@who))
@type (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: spoken (spoken) representation of speech

thought (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written (written) quotation from a written source

soCalled (so called) authorial distance

foreign (foreign)

distinct (distinct) linguistically distinct

term technical term

emph (emph) rhetorically emphasized

mentioned (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.common model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan

foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg resp rs rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure formula
May contain

Note: May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, `<q>` may be thought of as syntactic sugar for `<hi>` with a value of `rend` that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

It is spelled `<q>Tübingen</q>` — to enter the letter `<q>u</q>` with an umlaut hold down the `<q>option</q>` key and press `<q>0 0 f c</q>`

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
  }
```

230
Processing Model

<model predicate="l" behaviour="block"
useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>

<model predicate="ancestor::p or ancestor::cell"
behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition scope="before">content: ''';</outputRendition>
<outputRendition scope="after">content: ''';</outputRendition>
</model>

<model behaviour="block"
useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px; </outputRendition>
</model>

<quote>
(quotational) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to
some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation | 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

Module core

Attributes Attributes
  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated
  (@notation)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

analysis: 

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope cit corr del desc editor email expan foreign
  head hi item label measure name note num orig p pb pubPlace publisher q quote ref
  reg rs sic sp speaker stage term title unclear

drama: actor castList role roleDesc set

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change distributor edition extent licence rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: argument body div docAuthor docDate docEdition epigraph imprimatur
  postscript salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap
  graphic hi item lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q
  quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term time title unclear

231
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

Example

Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it keeps</quote> <ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element quote {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Processing Model

```
<model predicate="ancestor::p"
  behaviour="inline" useSourceRendition="true">
  <desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block level</desc>
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '':''</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '':''</outputRendition>
</model>

<model behaviour="block"
  useSourceRendition="true">
  <desc>If it is inside a paragraph then it is inline, otherwise it is block level</desc>
  <outputRendition>margin-left: 10px; margin-right: 10px;</outputRendition>
</model>
```
A reference (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References [16.1. Links]]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

- `att.cReferencing (@cRef)`
- `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
- `att.global rendition (@rendition)`
- `att.global linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.internetMedia (@mimeType)`
- `att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)`
- `att.typed (@type, @subtype)`

**Member of** `model.ptrLike`

**Contained by**

- `analysis: s`
- `core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cit corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig pb place publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear`
- `drama: actor castItem role roleDesc`
- `figures: cell figDesc`
- `header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence publicationStmt rendition tagUsage`
- `linking: ab seg`
- `textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer`
- `transcr: fw supplied`
- `verse: rhyme`

**May contain**

- `analysis: c pc s w`
- `core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear`
- `drama: castList`
- `figures: figure formula table gaiji: g header: biblFull idno linking: anchor seg namesdates: listPerson listPlace tagdocs: code textstructure: floatingText transcr: fw subst supplied verse: rhyme`

**Note** The `target` and `cRef` attributes are mutually exclusive.

**Example**

See especially `<ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2">the second sentence</ref>`
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target’
and @cRef’ may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element ref {
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline" predicate="not(@target)"/>
<model predicate="not(text())" behaviour="link">
  <param name="content" value="@target"/>
  <param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
<model behaviour="link">
  <param name="uri" value="@target"/>
</model>
```

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example
This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

Example

References are made up by concatenating the value for the attribute on the highest level element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential number of the next level element followed by a colon followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest) level.

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="citeStructure" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="cRefPattern" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | citeStructure+ | cRefPattern+ | refState+ )
}
```

(regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.5.2. Regularization and Normalization | 12. Critical Apparatus]

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.editLike
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

- model.choicePart
- model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

- analysis: pc s w
- core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email exp
- foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p
- pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```xml
  <q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg></q>
```

It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```xml
  <q>Please <choice>
    <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
    <orig>cnk</orig>
  </choice> if an <choice>
    <reg>answer</reg>
    <orig>nsr</orig>
  </choice> is <choice>
    <reg>required</reg>
    <orig>reqd</orig>
  </choice></q>
```

Content model

```xml
  <content>
    <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
  </content>
```
<relatedItem>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element reg>
  {att.global.attributes,
   att.editLike.attributes,
   att.typed.attributes,
   macro.paraContent}
</element>
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it. [3.12.2.7. Related Items]

Module core

Attributes

- `att.global`: 
  - `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space` 
  - `@rendition` (att.global.rendition) 
  - `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev` (att.global/linking) 
  - `@ana` (att.global/analytics) 
  - `@facs` (att.global/facs) 
  - `@cert`, `@resp` (att.global/responsibility) 
  - `@source` (att.global/source) 
  - `@type`, `@subtype` (att.typed)

- `@target`: points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative URI reference

  Status: Optional

  Datatype: teidata.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

- core: bibl
- header: notesStmt

May contain

- core: bibl listBibl ref
- header: biblFull

Note: If the `target` attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element must be empty.

Example

```xml
<bibl xml:id="Shirley1953">
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
  <date>1953</date>
  <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
  <relatedItem type="otherForm">
    <bibl>
      <author>Shirley, James</author>
      <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venicd</title>
      <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in Salisbury Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
      <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
      <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
      <date>1655</date>
      <extent>78 p.</extent>
    </bibl>
  </relatedItem>
</bibl>
```
Example

```xml
<relatedItem type="otherForm" target="http://www.example.com/bibliography.xml#Shirley1655"/>
```

**Schematron** `<sch:report test="@target and count( child::* ) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element relatedItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { text }?,
  ( model.biblLike | model.ptrLike )?
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```

**<rendition>** (rendition) supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]
@selector contains a selector or series of selectors specifying the elements to which the contained style description applies, expressed in the language specified in the scheme attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<rendition scheme="css"
  selector="text, front, back, body, div, p, ab">
  display: block;
</rendition>
<rendition scheme="css"
  selector="*[rend*=italic]"> font-style: italic;
</rendition>
```

Note Since the default value of the scheme attribute is assumed to be CSS, the default expectation for this attribute, in the absence of scheme, is that CSS selector syntax will be used.

While rendition is used to point from an element in the transcribed source to a rendition element in the header which describes how it appears, the selector attribute allows the encoder to point in the other direction: from a rendition in the header to a collection of elements which all share the same renditional features. In both cases, the intention is to record the appearance of the source text, not to prescribe any particular output rendering.

```
<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="r-center" scheme="css">text-align: center;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="r-small" scheme="css">font-size: small;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="r-large" scheme="css">font-size: large;</rendition>
  <rendition xml:id="initcaps"
    scope="first-letter" scheme="css">font-size: xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
**<resp>** (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person’s intellectual responsibility, or an organization’s role in the production or distribution of a work.

### Attributes

- `att.global.attributes`:
  - `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
- `att.styleDef.attributes`
- `attribute scope { text }?`
- `attribute selector { text }?`
- `macro.limitedContent`

### Module core

**Attributes**

- `att.global`
  - `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
  - `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
  - `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
  - `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
  - `att.global.facs (@facs)`
  - `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
  - `att.global.source (@source)`
  - `att.canonical (@ref)`
  - `att.datable (@calendar, @period)`

**Contained by**

- `core: respStmt`

**May contain**

- `core: abbr, address, cb, choice, date, email, expan, foreign, gap, hi, lb, measure, milestone, name, note, num, pb, q, ref, rs, term, time, title`
- `figures: figure`
- `header: idno`
- `linking: anchor`
- `tagdocs: code`
- `transcr: fw, subst`

**Note**

The attribute `ref`, inherited from the class `att.canonical` may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at [http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html](http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html) for bibliographic usage.

**Example**

```xml
<respStmt>
  <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```
<respStmt>
  (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the
  intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized
  elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to
  encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in
  the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. §3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors,
  and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The
  Series Statement

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref)

Member of model.respLike

Example

  <respStmt>
    <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
    <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
  </respStmt>

Example

  <respStmt>
    <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
    <name>Alan Morrison</name>
  </respStmt>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate>
      <sequence>
        <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
        <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
2.6 The Revision Description

The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
 (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.docStatus (@status)

Contained by
header: teiHeader

May contain
core: list
header: change listChange

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of
the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the
status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be
given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minoccurs="1" maxoccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="list"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  <elementRef key="change" minoccurs="1" maxoccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
Schema Declaration

```
<rhyme>

element revisionDesc
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.docStatus.attributes,
    ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
</rhyme>

Processing Model

```

```
<model behaviour="omit"/>
```

```
<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. 6.5. Rhyme

Module verse

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
(att.global.source (@source))
att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@label provides a label (usually a single letter) to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.word

Note Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their label attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other.

The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the rhyme attribute has been supplied.

Member of model.lPart

Contained by

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pb pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

drama: castList

figures: figure formula table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
```
Example

<lg rhyme="abababcc">
  <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <r rhyme label="a">wed</r>
  </l>
  <l>With persons of no sort of edu<r rhyme label="b">cation</r>,</l>
  <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and <r rhyme label="a">bred</r>,</l>
  <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<r rhyme label="b">sation</r>:</l>
  <l>I don't choose to say much on this <r rhyme label="a">head</r>,</l>
  <l>But - Oh! ye lords of ladies
  in<r rhyme label="c">lectual</r>,</l>
  <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-r<r rhyme label="c">peck'd you</r>?</l>
</lg>

Example

<lg>
  <l>Tyger! Tyger! burning <r rhyme label="a">bright</r></l>
  <l>In the forests of the <r rhyme label="a">night</r>,</l>
  <l>What immortal hand or <r rhyme label="b">eye</r></l>
  <l>Could frame thy fearful <r rhyme label="b" type="eye-rhyme">symmetry</r>?</l>
</lg>

Example

<lg>
  <l>"Hark! Lakshman! Hark, again that <r rhyme label="a">cry</r>!</l>
  <l>It is, -- it is my husband's <r rhyme label="b">voice</r>!</l>
  <l>Hasten, to his succour <r rhyme label="a">fly</r>,</l>
  <l>No more hast thou, dear friend, a <r rhyme label="b">choice</r>.</l>
  <l>He calls on thee, perhaps his <r rhyme label="c">foes</r>.</l>
  <l>Environ him on all sides <r rhyme label="d">round</r>,</l>
  <l>That wail, -- it means death's final <r rhyme label="c">throes</r>!</l>
  <l>Why standest thou, as magic-<r rhyme label="d">bound</r>?</l>
</lg>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration
(role) contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility
( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by
drama: castItem

May contain
analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corre date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title
unclear

figures: figure formula
gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg
tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the <role> element, since this
ID is referred to by who attributes on many other elements.

Example

<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration
element role { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"/>

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character’s role in a drama. [7.1.4. Cast Lists]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by
drama: castGroup, castItem

May contain
analysis: c, p, s, w

core: abbr, add, address, cb, choice, cit, corr, date, del, email, exp, foreign, gap, graphic, hi, lb,
measure, milestone, name, note, num, orig, pb, q, quote, ref, reg, rs, sic, term, time, title,
unclear

figures: figure, formula

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor, seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: FloatingText

transcr: fw, subst, supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"/>

<row> (row) contains one row of a table. [14.1.1. TEI Tables]

Module figures
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert,
@resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.tableDecoration (role, @rows, @cols)

@role (role) indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Derived from att.tableDecoration

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: data data cell [Default]

label label cell

sum row or column sum data

total table total data

Containing figures: table

May contain figures: cell

Example

<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>

Content model

<content>
  <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element row
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.rows,
  att.tableDecoration.attribute.cols,
  attribute role { "data" | "label" | "sum" | "total" }?,
  cell+
}

Processing Model

<model predicate="@role='label'"
  behaviour="row">
  <outputRendition>font-weight: bold;</outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="row">
  <desc>Insert table row. </desc>
</model>
<rs>
(referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [3.2.1.
Personal Names 3.6.1. Referring Strings]

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.fac (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
(att.canonical (@ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by
analysis: &
core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email
expan foreign head hi item I label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher
q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell figDesc
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
header: ratDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence
rendition tagUsage
linking: ab seg
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
transcr: fw supplied
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
verse: rhyme
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expand foreign gap graphic hi lb
measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
figures: figure formula
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
gaiji: g
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
header: idno
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
linking: anchor seg
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
tagdocs: code
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
textstructure: floatingText
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
transcr: fw subst supplied
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
verse: rhyme
drama: actor castItem role role Desc
character data
Example

<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>

Content model

<content>
<macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
<s>

Schema Declaration

```
<element rs {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.naming.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    macro.phraseSeq}
```

Processing Model `<model behaviour="inline"/>

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. </s>

Module: analysis

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
            (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global$linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
            (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility)
            (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att SEGLIKE (@function) (att.metrical
            (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated
            (@notation)

Member of: model.segLike

Contained by:

analysis: s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign
      head hi item label measure name note num orig p pb place publisher q quote ref
      reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
                imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain:

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb
      measure milestone name note num orig pb p pb place publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage
term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

figures: g

header: idno

linking: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: floatingText
transcr: | fw subst | supplied
\[verse: \] rhyme
character data

**Note** The `<s>` element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the `<seg>` should be used instead.

The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

**Example**

```xml
<head>
  <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Schematron `<s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>`

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element s {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Processing Model** `<model behaviour="inline"/>`

**<salute>** (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dediatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

**Module** textstructure

**Attributes** Attributes att.global (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`) (att.global.rendition (`@rendition`)) (att.global.linking (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)) (att.global.analytic (`@ana`)) (att.global.facs (`@facs`)) (att.global.responsibility (`@cert`, `@resp`)) (att.global.source (`@source`)) att.written (`@hand`)

**Member of** model.divWrapper

**Contained by**

- core: lg list
drama: castList
figures: figure table
textstructure: body closer div front group opener
May contain analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibli cb choice cit corr date del desc email expand foreign gap graphic hi ll label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pub q quote ref reg res sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

Example

<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the readinge.</salute>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element salute
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="parent::closer"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

<samplingDecl> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. 2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global/linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global/responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global/source (@source))

251
Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```xml
<samplingDecl>
  <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle, or end of each text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element samplingDecl { att.global.attributes, model.pLike+ }
```

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the chunk level.

Module linking

Attributes

`att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
`att.global.rendition` (@rendition) `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
`att.global.analytic` (@ana) `att.global.facs` (@facs) `att.global.linking`
`att.global.facs` (@facs) `att.global.linking`
`att.global.facs` (@facs)

Member of model.choicePart model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: sw

core: abbr addr addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del email expand foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

dynamics: cell

header: change distributor edition extent licence

linking: ab seg
May contain

Example

Example

Example

Content model

Schema Declaration
element seg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  att.notated.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"
  useSourceRendition="true"/>

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header
Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition))
  (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana))
  (att.global.faces (@faces))
  (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
  (att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
header: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core: biblScope editor respStmt title
header: idno
linking: ab
Example

<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence>
      <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="editor"/>
        <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
      </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>
<set>

(setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction). [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

Module drama

Attributes

att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl cb cit desc gap head l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote sp
stage

drama: castList
figures: figure table
header: biblFull
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace

textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw

Note Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags.

This element should not be used outside the front or back matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

Example

<set>
<text>
The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and six in the afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of England and Wales, where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</text>
</set>
Example

```xml
<set>
  <head>SCENE</head>
  <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>
```

Example

```xml
<front>
  <!-- <titlePage>, <div type="Dedication">, etc. -->
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label>
      <item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label>
      <item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.common"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element set
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )* , ( model.common , model.global* )* )
}
```

**<settingDesc>** (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module corpus

Attributes: 

- `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
- `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
- `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
- `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
- `att.global.facs (@facs)`
- `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
- `att.global.source (@source)`

Member of `model.profileDescPart`
<sic>

contained by
header: profileDesc
May contain
core: p
linking: ab
namesdates: listPlace place
Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> inside <standOff> should be preferred.
Example

<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the
      Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November 1988
  </p>
</settingDesc>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate>
    <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="setting"/>
      <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
      <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
    </alternate>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element settingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( setting | model.placeLike | listPlace )+ )
}

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.5.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core
Attributes Attributes: att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
          (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
          (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
          (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional
Contained by
analysis: pc sw

257
for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.

Example. If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example. It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <choice>
<sic>we can</sic>
<corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?

Example

for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <choice>
<sic>a Table</sic>

258
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element sic { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model predicate="parent::choice and count(parent::*/*) gt 1" behaviour="inline"/>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content: '{';</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content: '}';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<signed>(signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart | model.divTopPart

Contained by

- core: lg list
- drama: castList
- figures: figure table
- textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

- analysis: c pc w
- core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
- drama: castList
- figures: figure formula table
- gaiji: g
- header: biblFull idno
- linking: anchor seg
- namesdates: listPerson listPlace
- tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>

Example

<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
</signed>
</closer>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.written.attributes,
  macro.paraContent
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block"
  predicate="parent::closer">
  <outputRendition> text-align: right; </outputRendition>
</model>
<model behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition> font-style: italic; </outputRendition>
</model>

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic
  text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a
digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous
existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module header
Attributes Attributes att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
   (att.global.rendition ( @rendition)) (att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev))
   (att.global.analytic ( @ana)) (att.global.facs ( @facs)) (att.global.responsibility
   ( @cert, @resp)) (att.global.source ( @source))
<sp>

Contained by
header: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core: bibl list listBibl p
figures: table
header: biblFull
linking: ab
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
Example

<sourceDesc>
<bibl>
<title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>. In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>. <publisher>OUP</publisher> <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>

Example

<p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>

Content model

<content>
<alternate>
<classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
<classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
<classRef key="model.listLike"/>
</alternate>
</alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart | model.listLike )+
  }
}

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. 3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers

Module core

261
Attributes

Attributes

att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition))
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana))
(att.global.facs (@facs))
(att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
(att.global.source (@source))
att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom)
att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage
drama: castList set
figures: cell figure
header: change licence
textstructure: argument body div epigraph postscript

May contain

core: cb cit gap lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote speaker stage
figures: figure table
linking: ab anchor
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
textstructure: floatingText

transcr: fw

Note The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Example

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>

<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the first place [...]</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but for the present I will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>

Content model

<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global">
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="speaker"/>
      <classRef key="model.global">
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="lg"/>
      <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    </alternate>
  </sequence>
</content>
<speaker>

```xml
<sequence>
<alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element sp {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
    ( model.global* ,
        ( speaker, model.global* )?,
        {
            
            ( lg | model.lLike | model.pLike | model.listLike | model.stageLike | model.attributable )
            ( model.global* | q )
        }+
    )
}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="block"/>
```

**<speaker>** contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama]

**Module core**

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>att.global.attributes</th>
<th>att.ascribed.directed.attributes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>model.global*</td>
<td>( speaker, model.global* )?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lg</td>
<td>model.lLike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Contained by**

| core: sp |

**May contain**

| analysis: cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb measure milestone name note num orig pb quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear |

**figures:** figure formula

gaiji: g

tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

calendar data

Example

<div type="Act" n="I">
  <head>ACT I</head>
  <div type="Scene" n="1">
    <head>SCENE I</head>
    <stagrendition="#italic">Enter Barnardo and Francisco, two Sentinels, at
    several doors</stag>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l part="Y">Who's there?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Nay, answer me. Stand and unfold yourself.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l>Long live the King!</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>Barnardo?</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Barn</speaker>
      <l>He.</l>
    </sp>
    <sp>
      <speaker>Fran</speaker>
      <l>You come most carefully upon your hour.</l>
    </sp>
    <!-- ... -->
  </div>
</div>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Processing Model

<model behaviour="block">
  <outputRendition> font-style:italic; </outputRendition>
</model>
(stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.13.2. Core Tags for Drama] [3.13. Passages of Verse or Drama] [7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module core

Attributes

- att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) (att.placement (@place))

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

**Status** Recommended

**Datatype** 0–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

**Suggested values include:**
- **setting** describes a setting.
- **entrance** describes an entrance.
- **exit** describes an exit.
- **business** describes stage business.
- **novelistic** is a narrative, motivating stage direction.
- **delivery** describes how a character speaks.
- **modifier** gives some detail about a character.
- **location** describes a location.
- **mixed** more than one of the above

**Note** If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

Member of `model.stageLike`

Contained by `core: add corr del desc head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear`

- **drama:** castList set
- **figures:** cell figDesc figure
- **header:** change licence rendition tagUsage
- **linking:** ab seg
- **textstructure:** argument body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute signed titlePart trailer
- **transcr:** supplied
- **verse:** rhyme

May contain `analysis: c pc w`

- **core:** abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi l label lb lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig p pb q quote ref reg rs sic sp stage term time title unclear

- **drama:** castList
- **figures:** figure formula table
- **gaiji:** g
- **header:** biblFull idno
The who attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

Example

```xml
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```xml
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
   <hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
   straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
   two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boe another: who sate
   thus till the rest of the
   <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
   order within the <hi>Scene</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
   Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
   <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element stage {
   att.ascribed.directed.attributes,
   att.global.attributes,
   att.placement.attributes,
   attribute type {
      list {
         "setting"
      }
   }
}
```
(substitution) groups one or more deletions (or surplus text) with one or more additions when the combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text.

Module transcr

Attributes

\begin{itemize}
  \item `att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)`
  \item `att.global.rendition (@rendition)`
  \item `att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)`
  \item `att.global.analytic (@ana)`
  \item `att.global.facs (@facs)`
  \item `att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)`
  \item `att.transcriptional (@status, @cause, @seq)`
  \item `att.editLike` (att.written (@hand))
  \item `att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope)`
\end{itemize}

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: p cs w

core: abbr add addLine author bibl biblScope corr date desc editor email expan

foreign head hi item l label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q

quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc

header: catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence

rendition tagUsage

linking: ab seg

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: add cb del lb milestone ph

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
  <add> Throwable</add>
  <del> Throwable</del>
</subst> he expressed

Example

that he and his Sister Mifs D — <lb/> who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
  <del>very</del>
  <lb/>
  <add> principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.

Example

<ab>T<subst>
  <add place="above"> ῥων</add>
  <del> α</del>
</subst>

Example

<subst>
  <del>
    <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5" unit="character"/>
  </del>
  <add> apple</add>
</subst>

Schematron  <s:assert test="child::tei:add and (child::tei:del or child::tei:surplus)"/>
<s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del or surplus</s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="add"/>
    <elementRef key="surplus"/>
    <elementRef key="del"/>
    <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration
Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>

(supplied) signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes

att.global (xml:id, @n, xml:lang, xml:base, xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition) )
( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) )
( att.global.analytic (@ana) )
( att.global.facs (@facs) )
( att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) )
( att.global.source (@source) )
att.editLike
att.dimensions (@unit, @reason)

@reason one or more words indicating why the text has had to be supplied, e.g. overbinding, faded-ink, lost-folio, omitted-in-original.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice corr date del editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
dramaturg: playList
dramaturg: playList
drama: roleDesc
drama: character
drama: castItem
drama: castItem
drama: roleDesc
drama: character
drama: castItem
drama: roleDesc
drama: character
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap graphic hi label lb lg listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
The `<damage>`, `<gap>`, `<del>`, `<unclear>`, and `<supplied>` elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the `gap`, `del`, `damage`, `unclear`, and `supplied` elements in combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**Example**

I am dr Sr yr

```xml
<supplied reason="illegible"
source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
```

Sydney Smith

**Example**

```xml
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of Bejar
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

**Schema Declaration**

```xml
element supplied
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.editLike.attributes,
    att.dimensions.attributes,
    attribute reason { list { + } }?,
    macro.paraContent
  }
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model predicate="parent::choice"
  behaviour="inline"/>
<model predicate="@reason='damage'"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content:"<";</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content:">
</model>
<model predicate="@reason='illegible' or not(@reason)"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content:"[";</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content:"]";
</model>
<model predicate="@reason='omitted'"
  behaviour="inline">
  <outputRendition scope="before">content:"(";</outputRendition>
  <outputRendition scope="after">content:"");";
</model>
```
defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr
Attributes

@attachment describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: glued glued in place
pinned pinned or stapled in place
sewn sewn in place

@flipping indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Contained transcr: facsimile surface zone
May contain
core: cb desc gap graphic label lb milestone note pb
figures: figure formula
linking: anchor
transcr: fw surface zone

Note The <surface> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.

The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid \( lrx - ulx \) units wide and \( uly - lry \) units high.

The <surface> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.

Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> element.

Example
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
      <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate>
        <elementRef key="zone"/>
        <elementRef key="line"/>
        <elementRef key="path"/>
        <elementRef key="surface"/>
        <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element surface {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute attachment { text }?,
  attribute flipping { text }?,
  { ( model.global | model.labelLike | model.graphicLike )*,
    ( ( zone | line | path | surface | surfaceGrp ), model.global* )*
  }
}
```

A table (table) contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1TEI Tables]

**Module figures**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`)
- `att.global.rendition` (`@rendition`)
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)
- `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)
- `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)
- `att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)
- `att.global.source` (`@source`)
- `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

**Rows** (rows) indicates the number of rows in the table.

**Status** Optional
**Datatype** teidata.count

**Note** If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.
Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.count

**Note** If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

---

**Member of** model.listLike

**Contained by**
- core: add corr del desc head hi item i note orig p q quote rel reg sic sp stage title unclear
drama: castList set
figures: cell figDesc figure
header: abstract change licence rendition sourceDesc tagUsage
linking: ab ab seg

textstructure: argument back body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript salute
titlePart trailer

transcr: supplied

verse: rhyme

**May contain**
- core: cb ch gap graphic head lb milestone note pb

figures: figure formula row

linking: anchor

textstructure: argument byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript

salute signed trailer

transcr: fw

**Note** Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.
Any rendition information should be supplied using the global rend attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

**Example**

```xml
<table rows="4" cols="4">
  <head>Poor Men’s Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
  <row role="label">
    <cell role="data">Poor Men’s Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
    <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
    <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Bury St Edmund’s</cell>
    <cell role="data">5</cell>
    <cell role="data">8</cell>
    <cell role="data">128</cell>
  </row>
  <row role="data">
    <cell role="data">Thetford</cell>
    <cell role="data">3</cell>
    <cell role="data">6</cell>
  </row>
</table>
```
Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <elementRef key="row"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
      <classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element table {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute rows { text }?,
  attribute cols { text }?,
  ( model.headLike | model.global)*,
  ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( model.graphicLike, model.global* )+ ),
  ( model.divBottom, model.global* )*
}
PROCESSING MODEL

```xml
<model behaviour="table">
<outputRendition> font-size: smaller; background-color: #F0F0F0; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

**Tag Usage**

*(element usage)* documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

**Module header**

**Attributes**

- `att.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- `att.global.rendition` (@rendition)
- `att.global.linking` (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- `att.global.analytic` (@ana)
- `att.global.facs` (@facs)
- `att.global.responsibility` (@cert, @resp)
- `att.global.source` (@source)

- `@gi` (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent `<namespace>` element.
  - **Status**: Required
  - **Datatype**: teidata.name

- `@occurs` specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.
  - **Status**: Recommended
  - **Datatype**: teidata.count

- `@withId` (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global `xml:id` attribute.
  - **Status**: Recommended
  - **Datatype**: teidata.count

**Contained by**

- header: namespace

**May contain**

- core: abbr address bibl choice cit date desc email expand foreign hi label list listBibl measure name num q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: castList
figures: table
header: biblFull idno
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: subst
character data

**Example**

```xml
<tagsDecl partial="true">
<rendition xml:id="it" scheme="css"
```
selector="foreign, hi"> font-style: italic; </rendition>
</foreign>

<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
<tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used to mark English words italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
<tagUsage gi="foreign"> Used to mark non-English words in the copy text. </tagUsage>
</namespace>
</tagsDecl>

Content model

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

<tagsDecl>
  (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. 2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description
</tagsDecl>

Attribute Attributes
  att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facets (@facets)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))
  @partial indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.
  Status Recommended
  Datatype teidata.truthValue
  Note TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true.

Member of model.encodingDescPart
Contained by
  header: encodingDesc
May contain
  header: namespace rendition
Example

```xml
<tagsDecl partial="true">
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it" scheme="css"
    selector="emph, hi, name, title">font-style: italic;</rendition>
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
  <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
</namespace>
<namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
  <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
</namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

If the `partial` attribute were not specified here, the implication would be that the document in question contains only `&lt;hi&gt;`, `&lt;title&gt;`, and `&lt;para&gt;` elements.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="rendition" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="namespace" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element tagsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute partial { text }?,
  ( rendition*, namespace* )
}
```

`<taxonomy>` (taxonomy) defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes

- `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`)
- `att.global.rendition` (`@rendition`)
- `att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`)
- `att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)
- `att.global.facs` (`@facs`)
- `att.global.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)
- `att.global.source` (`@source`)

Contained by

- `header`: `classDecl` `taxonomy`

May contain

- `core`: `bibl` `desc` `listBibl`
- `header`: `biblFull` `category` `taxonomy`

Note Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the `<taxonomy>` element can be nested.

Example
Example

```
<taxonomy>
  <category xml:id="literature">
    <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="poetry">
    <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="sonnet">
    <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
    <catDesc>Shakespearan Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
    <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="haiku">
    <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="drama">
    <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="meter">
    <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feet">
    <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="iambic">
    <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="trochaic">
    <catDesc>Trochaic</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="feetNumber">
    <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="pentameter">
    <catDesc>Pentameter</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tetrameter">
    <catDesc>Tetrameter</catDesc>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">

```
<alt minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<elementRef key="category"/>
<elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
</alt>
</sequence>
</alt>
</sequence>
</alt>
</sequence>
</alt>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  {
    (category | taxonomy)+
    | ( ( model.descLike | equiv | gloss )+, ( category | taxonomy )* )
    | ( model.biblLike, ( category | taxonomy )* )
  }
}

<teiCorpus> TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more <TEI> elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module  core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
@version (version) specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.version

**Note** Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the source attribute on the associated `<schemaSpec>`.

**Member of** model.describedResource

**Contained by**

core: teiCorpus

**May contain**

core: teiCorpus

header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI text
transcr: facsimile

**Note** Should contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of `<TEI>` elements, one for each text.

**Example**

```xml
<teiCorpus version="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <teiHeader>
    <!-- header for corpus -->
  </teiHeader>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader>
      <!-- header for first text -->
    </teiHeader>
    <text>
      <!-- content of first text -->
    </text>
    <TEI>
      <teiHeader>
        <!-- header for second text -->
      </teiHeader>
      <text>
        <!-- content of second text -->
      </text>
      <TEI>
        <!-- more TEI elements here -->
      </teiHeader>
    </text>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <sequence>
    <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
    <classRef key="model.resource"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.describedResource"
      minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```
<teiHeader>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Schema Declaration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>element teiCorpus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>{</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.attributes,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed.attributes,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attribute version { text }?,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( teiHeader, model.resource*, model.describedResource+ )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition (@rendition)) ( att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
( att.global.analytic (@ana)) ( att.global.facs (@facs)) ( att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) ( att.global.source (@source))

Contained by
core: teiCorpus
textstructure: TEI

May contain
header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.
Example

<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
<titleStmt>
<title>THE TEMPEST.</title>
<author>Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616</author>
</titleStmt>
<publicationStmt>
<distributor>
<name>University of Oxford Text Archive</name>
<address>
<addrLine>Oxford University Computing Services</addrLine>
<addrLine>13 Banbury Road</addrLine>
<addrLine>Oxford</addrLine>
<addrLine>OX2 6NN</addrLine>
</address>
<email>ota@oucs.ox.ac.uk</email>
</distributor>
</fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
THE TEMPEST.

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616

Lee, Sidney, Sir, 1859-1926

THE TEMPEST.

University of Oxford Text Archive Subject Headings

Library of Congress Subject Headings

English

Plays -- England -- 16th century

Plays -- England -- 17th century

Comedies -- England -- 16th century

Comedies -- England -- 17th century

Tragedies -- England -- 16th century

Tragedies -- England -- 17th century
<revisionDesc>
  <change when="2010-08-31">Header normalised</change>
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
    <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="revisionDesc" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element teiHeader {
  att.global.attributes,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="metadata"/>
```

**<term>** (term) contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.4.1. Terms and Glosses]

Module core

**Attributes**

- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.canonical (@ref)
- att.sortable (@sortKey)
- att.cReferencing (@cRef)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

**analysis:**

- abbr
- add
- addrLine
- author
- bibl
- biblScope
- corr
- date
- del
- desc
- editor
- email
- expan
- foreign
- head
- hi
- item
- label
- measure
- note
- num
- orig
- p
- publisher
- quote
- ref
- reg
- resp
- rs
- sic
- speaker
- stage
- term
- time
- title
- unclear

**drama:**

- actor
- castItem
- role
- roleDesc

**figures:**

- cell
- figDesc

**header:**

- catDesc
- change
- classCode
- creation
- distributor
- edition
- extent
- keywords
- language
- licence
- rendition
- tagUsage

**linking:**

- ab
- seg

**textstructure:**

- byline
- closer
- dateline
- docAuthor
- docDate
- docEdition
- docImprint
- imprimatur
- opener
- salute
- signed
- titlePart
- trailer

**transcr:**

- fw
- supplied

**verse:**

- rhyme
May contain

analysis: c pc s w

core: abbr add address cb choice cit corr date del email expan foreign gap graphic hi lb

measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote ref reg rs sic term time title unclear

figures: figure formula

gaiji: g

core: idno

module: anchor seg

tagdocs: code

textstructure: FloatingText

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Note This element should only be used in the TEI Header

Example

```xml
<keywords>
  <term>huntin</term>
  <term>shootin</term>
  <term>fishin</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.cReferencing.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

```xml
{text> (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)

(att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))

(att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility

(@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written

(@hand)

Member of model.resource
```
Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the `<floatingText>` is provided for this purpose.

Example

```xml
<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```xml
<text>
  <front>
    <!-- front matter for the whole group -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <!-- first text -->
    <text>
      <!-- second text -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
```

Schematron `<s:rule context="tei:term | tei:biblFull ">
  <s:report test="ancestor::tei:text">Error: The element <s:name/> is not permitted outside the header</s:report> </s:rule>`

Content model

```
<content>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="front"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

285
<elementRef key="body"/>
<elementRef key="group"/>
</alternate>
<classRef key="model.global"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="back"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

```xml
<element text
  {
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.written.attributes,
    {
      model.global*,
      ( front, model.global* )?,
      ( body | group ),
      model.global*,
      ( back, model.global* )?
    }
  }
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="body">
<outputRendition> max-width: 80%; margin: auto; font-family: Verdana, Tahoma, Geneva, Arial, Helvetica, sans-serif; </outputRendition>
</model>
```

<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header
Attributes
att.global ( @xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
( att.global.rendition ( @rendition ) )
( att.global.linking ( @corresp, @next, @prev ) )
( att.global.analytic ( @ana ) )
( att.global.facs ( @facs ) )
( att.global.responsibility ( @cert, @resp ) )
( att.global.source ( @source ) )

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by
header: profileDesc

May contain
header: catRef
classCode
keywords

Example
<time>(time) contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.6.4. Dates and Times]

Module core
Attributes
att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
    (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
    (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
        (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datablle (@calendar, @period)
    (att.databind.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.canonical (@ref)
att.editLike att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope) att.typed (@type,
    @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by
analysis:

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope cor date del desc editor email expan
    foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q
    quote ref reg res rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

drama: actor castItem role roleDesc

figures: cell figDesc
As he sat smiling, the quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element time {
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="inline"/>
```
<title> (title) contains a title for any kind of work. 3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement

Module core
Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: main main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: a (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.

m (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works

j (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

s (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection

u (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is ipso facto of level a, and one appearing within a <series> element of level s. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.
Member of \texttt{model.emphLike}

Contained by analysis:

\texttt{\textbf{core:}} abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del desc editor email expan foreign head hi item label measure name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear

\texttt{\textbf{drama:}} actor castItem role roleDesc

\texttt{\textbf{figures:}} cell figDesc

\texttt{\textbf{header:}} catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent language licence rendition seriesStmt tagUsage titleStmt

\texttt{\textbf{linking:}} ab seg

\texttt{\textbf{textstructure:}} byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

\texttt{imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

\texttt{\textbf{transcr:}} fw supplied

\texttt{\textbf{verse:}} rhyme

May contain analysis:

\texttt{\textbf{core:}} abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date del desc email expan foreign gap

\texttt{graphic hi label lb lg listListBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote}

\texttt{ref reg rs sic stage term time title unclear

\texttt{\textbf{drama:}} castList

\texttt{\textbf{figures:}} figure formula table

\texttt{\textbf{gaiji:}} g

\texttt{\textbf{header:}} biblFull idno

\texttt{\textbf{linking:}} anchor seg

\texttt{\textbf{namesdates:}} listPerson listPlace

\texttt{\textbf{tagdocs:}} code

\texttt{\textbf{textstructure:}} floatingText

\texttt{\textbf{transcr:}} fw subst supplied

\texttt{\textbf{verse:}} rhyme

character data

\textit{Note} The attributes \texttt{key} and \texttt{ref}, inherited from the class \texttt{att.canonical} may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

\begin{verbatim}<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18–21 July 1989</title>
\end{verbatim}

Example

\begin{verbatim}<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>
\end{verbatim}

Example
<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (-----, @subtype)

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the main title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by textstructure: back front

May contain core: cb gap graphic lb milestone note pb

figures: figure

linking: anchor

<docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for <name>T.P.</name> <date>1612.</date>
Content model

```xml
<content>
<sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
<classRef key="model.global" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
<alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
<classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
<classRef key="model.global"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```xml
element titlePage
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributesubtype,
    attribute type { text }?,
    { model.global*,
        model.titlepagePart,
        ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )* }
}
```

Processing Model

```xml
<model behaviour="block"
    useSourceRendition="true">
<outputRendition> text-align: center;</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<titlePart> (title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

**Attributes**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Datatype</th>
<th>Suggested values include</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td>main (main) main title of the work [Default] sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>@rendition</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>@corresp, @next, @prev</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>@ana</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>@facs</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>@cert, @resp</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>@source</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>type @subtype</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>teidata.enumerated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

@type (type) specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.
alt (alternate) alternative title of the work
short (short) abbreviated form of title
desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by
textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain
analysis: c pc s w
core: abbr add address bibl cb choice cit corr date desc email expand foreign gap
graphic hi label lg list listBibl measure milestone name note num orig pb q quote
reg rs sic stage term time title unclear
drama: castList
figures: figure formula table
gaiji: G
header: biblFull idno
linking: anchor seg
namesdates: listPerson listPlace
tagdocs: code
textstructure: floatingText
transcr: fw subst supplied
verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS Moll Flanders, &c.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
<titleStmt>

(title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description

Module header
Attributes
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)

Contained by
header: biblFull fileDesc
May contain
core: author editor respStmt title

Example

<titleStmt>
<title>Capgrave’s Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</title>
<respStmt>
<resp>compiled by</resp>
<name>P.J. Lucas</name>
</respStmt>
</titleStmt>

Content model
<content>
<sequence>
  <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.respLike" minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</sequence>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }

<trailer>
contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text. 4.2.4. Content of Textual Divisions 4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions

Module textstructure
Attributes
- att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.placement (@place)
- att.written (@hand)

Member of model.divBottomPart
Contained by
May contain

Example

From EEBO A87070

Content model

Schema Declaration
<unclear> (unclear) contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

**Module**

**Attributes**

- **att.global**
  - `@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@xml:base`, `@xml:space`
  - `@rendition` (rendition)
  - `@corresp`, `@next`, `@prev`
  - `@ana`
  - `@facs`
  - `@cert`, `@resp`
  - `@source`

- **att.editLike**

- **att.dimensions**
  - `@unit`, `@quantity`, `@extent`, `@scope`

**@reason** indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.enumerated` separated by whitespace

**Suggested values include:**

- **inaudible** (inaudible)
- **faded** (faded)
- **background_noise** (background_noise)
- **eccentric_ductus** (eccentric_ductus) indicates illegibility due to an unusual, awkward, or incompetent execution of a glyph or glyphs

**Note** One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause.

**@agent** Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`

**Sample values include:**

- **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges
- **mildew** damage results from mildew on the leaf surface
- **smoke** damage results from smoke

**Member of** `model.choicePart`, `model.linePart`, `model.pPart.transcriptional`
Note  The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.

The `<damage>`, `<gap>`, `<del>`, `<unclear>`, and `<supplied>` elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The `hand` attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

```xml
<w> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said ...
</w>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```
**Schema Declaration**

```xml
<element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute reason
  {
    list
    {
      "illegible"
      | "inaudible"
      | "faded"
      | "background_noise"
      | "eccentric_ductus"
    )+
  }
  },
  attribute agent { text }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Processing Model**

```xml
<model behaviour="inline">
<outputRendition scope="after">content: ' [?] ';</outputRendition>
</model>
```

<word> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories |17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

**Module** analysis

Attributes: Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)
  (att.global.rendition (@rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev))
  (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.responsibility
  (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical
  (@rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.linguistic
  (@lemma, @lemmaRef) att.notated (@notation)

Member of model.linePart | model.segLike

**Contained by**

analysis: s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope corr date del editor email expan foreign
  head hi item l label measure name note n orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
  reg rs sic speaker stage term time title unclear
drama: actor castItem role roleDesc
figures: cell
header: change distributor edition extent licence
linking: ab seg
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
    imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: fw supplied zone

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr add ch choice cori del expan gap hi lb milestone note orig ph q reg sic unclear

figures: figure

linking: anchor seg

transcr: fw subst supplied

verse: rhyme

character data

Example

<s n="1">
  <w ana="#NP0" type="open" lemma="Marley">Marley</w>
  <w ana="#VBD" type="verb" lemma="be">was</w>
  <w ana="#AJ0" type="complement" lemma="die">dead</w>
</s>

Content model

<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="seg"/>
    <elementRef key="w"/>
    <elementRef key="m"/>
    <elementRef key="c"/>
    <elementRef key="pc"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  </alternate>
</content>

Schema Declaration

element w
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.segLike.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    att.linguistic.attributes,
    att.notated.attributes,
    {
        text
        | model.gLike | seg | w | m | c | pc | model.global | model.lPart
    }
}

Processing Model

<model behaviour="inline"/>
(<xenoData> 

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]

Module header

Attributes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.global</td>
<td>(xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>(@rendition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>(@corresp, @next, @prev)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.analytic</td>
<td>(@ana)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.facs</td>
<td>(@facs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.responsibility</td>
<td>(@cert, @resp)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.source</td>
<td>(@source)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.typed</td>
<td>(@type, @subtype)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by	header: teiHeader

May contain	ANY

Example

In this example, the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#, the prefix dc is bound to the namespace http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/, and the prefix cc is bound to the namespace http://web.resource.org/cc/.

<xenoData>

xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/

xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#"
</xenoData>
Example In this example, the prefix dc is again bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/, and the prefix oai_dc is bound to the namespace http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/.

<xenoData
  xmlns:oai_dc="http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/"
  xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/">
  <dc:title>The colonial despatches of Vancouver Island and British Columbia 1846-1871: 11566, CO 60/2, p. 291; received 13 November. Trevelyan to Merivale (Permanent Under-Secretary)</dc:title>
  <dc:date>1858-11-12</dc:date>
  <dc:creator>Trevelyan</dc:creator>
  <dc:publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media Centre, and UVic Libraries</dc:publisher>
  <dc:type>InteractiveResource</dc:type>
  <dc:format>application/xhtml+xml</dc:format>
  <dc:description>British Columbia correspondence: Public Offices document (normally correspondence between government departments)</dc:description>
</xenoData>
Example In this example, the prefix mods is bound to the namespace http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3.

```xml
<xenoData
    xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3">
    <mods:mods>
        <mods:titleInfo>
            <mods:title>Academic adaptation and cross-cultural learning experiences of Chinese students at American universities</mods:title>
            <mods:subTitle>a narrative inquiry</mods:subTitle>
        </mods:titleInfo>
        <mods:name type="personal" authority="local">
            <mods:namePart/>
            <mods:role>
                <mods:roleTerm authority="marcrelator" type="text">Author</mods:roleTerm>
            </mods:role>
            <mods:affiliation>Northeastern University</mods:affiliation>
            <mods:namePart type="given">Hong</mods:namePart>
            <mods:namePart type="family">Zhang</mods:namePart>
        </mods:name>
        <mods:name type="personal" authority="local">
            <mods:namePart/>
            <mods:role>
                <mods:roleTerm authority="local" type="text">Advisor</mods:roleTerm>
            </mods:role>
            <mods:namePart type="given">Liliana</mods:namePart>
            <mods:namePart type="family">Meneses</mods:namePart>
        </mods:name>
    </mods:mods>
</xenoData>
```

Example This example shows GeoJSON embedded in <xenoData>. Note that JSON does not permit newlines inside string values. These must be escaped as \n. To avoid the
accidental insertion of newlines by software, the use of xml:space is recommended. Blocks of JSON should be wrapped in CDATA sections, as they may contain characters illegal in XML.

```xml
<xenoData xml:space="preserve">
<!CDATA[
{
  "features": [
  {
    "geometry": {
      "type": "Point",
      "coordinates": [
        68.388483,
        33.498616
      ]
    },
    "type": "Feature",
    "id": "darmc-location-19727",
    "properties": {
      "snippet": "Unknown; 330 BC - AD 300",
      "link": "https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/59694/darmc-location-19727",
      "description": "5M scale point location",
      "location_precision": "precise",
      "title": "DARMC location 19727"
    }
  },
  {
    "id": "59694",
    "subject": [
      "dare:ancient=1",
      "dare:feature=settlement",
      "dare:major=0"
    ],
    "title": "Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "provenance": "Barrington Atlas: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "placeTypeURIs": [
      "https://pleiades.stoa.org/vocabularies/place-types/settlement"
    ],
    "@context": {
      "snippet": "dcterms:abstract",
      "rights": "dcterms:rights",
      "description": "dcterms:description",
      "title": "dcterms:title",
      "dcterms": "http://purl.org/dc/terms/",
      "subject": "dcterms:subject",
      "uri": "@id",
      "created": "dcterms:created"
    },
    "review_state": "published",
    "type": "FeatureCollection",
    "description": "An ancient place, cited: BAtlas 6 B3 Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria",
    "reprPoint": [
      68.388483,
      33.498616
    ],
    "placeTypes": [
      "settlement"
    ],
    "bbox": [
      68.388483,
      33.498616,
```
Note: the example above has been trimmed for legibility. The original may be found linked from Arachosiorum Oppidum/Alexandria. The contributors, listed per the license terms, are R. Talbert, Jeffrey Becker, W. Röllig, Tom Elliott, H. Kopp, DARM, Sean Gillies, B. Siewert-Mayer, Francis Deblauwe, and Eric Kansa.

Content model

```
<content>
<alternate>
<textNode/>
<anyElement/>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element xenoData
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.typed.attributes,
    ( text | anyElement-xenoData )
}
```

<zone> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes

- att.global <xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space>
- att.global.rendition (@rendition)
- att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev)
- att.global.analytic (@ana)
- att.global.facs (@facs)
- att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)
- att.global.source (@source)
- att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry, @points)
- att.typed (@type, @subtype)
- att.written (@hand)

@rotate indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.

Status Optional
**Datatype** | teidata.count
---|---
**Default** | 0

**Member of** | model.linePart

**Contain by**
- **transcr:** surface zone

**May contain**
- analysis: c pc w
core: add ch choice del gap graphic hi lb milestone note pb q unclear
figures: figure formula
gaiji: g
linking: anchor seg
transcr: fw surface zone

**Character data**

**Note**
The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.

A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.

A zone may be of any shape. The attribute *points* may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.

A zone is always a closed polygon. Repeating the initial coordinate at the end of the sequence is optional. To encode an unclosed path, use the `<path>` element.

**Example**

```xml
<surface ulx="14.54" uly="16.14" lrx="0" lry="0">
  <graphic url="stone.jpg"/>
  <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875 10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>
</surface>
```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

**Example**

```xml
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400" lry="280">
    <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321">
      <graphic url="graphic.png"/>
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
17.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.6.2. Addresses]
Module tei
Used by address
Members model.nameLike model.nameLike.agent name idno rs addrLine

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [The TEI Infrastructure]
Module tei
Used by model.pPart.data
Members address email

model.attributable groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.2. Floating Texts]
Module tei
Used by cit macro.phraseSeq model.inter sp
Members model.quoteLike cit quote floatingText

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]
Module tei
Used by availability
Members licence
model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module tei
Used by cit listBibl model.inter model.personPart place relatedItem sourceDesc taxonomy
Members bibl biblFull listBibl

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module tei
Used by bibl
Members model.imprintPart biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher model.respLike author editor respStmt availability bibl edition extent relatedItem

model.castItemPart groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor’s name.

Module tei
Used by castItem
Members actor role roleDesc

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by choice
Members abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic supplied unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by argument body castList div epigraph figure postscript set
Members model.divPart model.pLike model.pPart ab p lg sp model.inter model.attributable model.quoteLike cit quote floatingText model.biblLike bibl biblFull listBibl model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list listPerson listPlace table model.stageLike stage castList q

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.6.4. Dates and Times 13.4. Dates]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.data
Members date time
model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei
Used by category char glyph graphic taxonomy
Members desc

model.describedResource groups elements which contain the content of a digital resource and its metadata; these elements may serve as the outermost or root element of a TEI-conformant document [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by teiCorpus
Members TEI teiCorpus

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

Module tei
Used by body div figure front group lg list table
Members model.divBottomPart closer postscript signed trailer
model.divWrapper argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module tei
Used by back model.divBottom postscript
Members closer postscript signed trailer

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei
Used by back body div front
Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by macro.specialPara model.common
Members model.lLike l model.pLike ab p lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.
**model.divTop** groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* body castList div group lg list

*Members* model.divTopPart model.headLike head opener signed model.divWrapper argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

**model.divTopPart** groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divTop postscript

*Members* model.headLike head opener signed

**model.divWrapper** groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.divBottom model.divTop

*Members* argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

**model.emphLike** groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

*Module* tei

*Used by* model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

*Members* code foreign term title

**model.encodingDescPart** groups elements which may be used inside `<encodingDesc>` and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* encodingDesc

*Members* charDecl classDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl

**model.frontPart** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]

*Module* tei

*Used by* back front

*Members* model.frontPart.drama castList set listBibl titlePage

**model.frontPart.drama** groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1. Front and Back Matter]
model.gLike  groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module  tei
Used by  model.frontPart
Members  castList set

model.global  groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module  tei
Used by  address argument back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date dateline docImprint docTitle epigraph figure floatingText front group head lb lg list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext opener pc time trailer w zone
Members  model.global.edit gap model.global.meta model.milestoneLike anchor cb fw lb milestone pb model.noteLike note figure

model.global.edit  groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module  tei
Used by  model.global
Members  gap

model.graphicLike  groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.10. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

Module  tei
Used by  char cit facsimile figure formula glyph model.phrase surface table zone
Members  formula graphic

model.headLike  groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module  tei
Used by  argument castGroup figure listBibl listPerson listPlace model.divTopPart place set table
Members  head
model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module: tei
Used by: formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w
Members: hi q

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3. Highlighting and Quotation]

Module: tei
Used by: bibl model.phrase
Members: model.emphLike code foreign term title model.hiLike hi q

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.12. Bibliographic Citations and References]

Module: tei
Used by: model.biblPart
Members: biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module: tei
Used by: head i macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common trailer
Members: model.attributable model.quoteLike cit quote floatingText model.biblLike bibl bibFull listBibl model.labelLike desc label model.listLike list listPerson listPlace table model.stageLike stage castList

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module: tei
Used by: head i model.paraContent model.divPart sp trailer
Members: l

model.lPart groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2. Components of the Verse Line]

Module: tei
Used by: model.phrase w
Members: rhyme

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.
model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by lg model.inter place surface
Members desc label

model.limitedPhrase

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

Module tei
Used by zone
Members model.hiLike hi q add c choice del pc seg unclear w zone

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.8. Lists]

Module tei
Used by abstract back model.inter sourceDesc sp
Members list listPerson listPlace table

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.6.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.data
Members measure num

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. The TEI Class System 3.11.3. Milestone Elements]

Module tei
Used by listBibl model.global subst
Members anchor cb fw lb milestone pb

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

313
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

*Used by* `model.addrPart` `model.pPart.data`

*Members* `model.nameLike.agent` `name` `idno` `rs`

*Note* A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

---

**model.nameLike.agent** groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `model.nameLike` `respStmt`

*Members* `name`

*Note* This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

---

**model.noteLike** groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.9. Notes, Annotation, and Indexing]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `char` `glyph` `model.global` `notesStmt` `place`

*Members* `note`

---

**model.pLike** groups paragraph-like elements.

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `abstract` `availability` `back` `editionStmt` `editorialDecl` `encodingDesc` `front` `langUsage` `model.divPart` `particDesc` `person` `place` `prefixDef` `projectDesc` `publicationStmt` `refsDecl` `samplingDecl` `seriesStmt` `settingDesc` `sourceDesc` `sp`

*Members* `ab` `p`

---

**model.pLike.front** groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6. Title Pages]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `back` `front`

*Members* `argument` `byline` `dateline` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `epigraph` `head` `titlePart`

---

**model.pPart.data** groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses]

*Module* `tei`

*Used by* `bibl` `model.limitedPhrase` `model.phrase`

*Members* `model.addressLike` `address` `email` `model.dateLike` `date` `time`
`model.measureLike` `measure` `num` `model.nameLike` `model.nameLike.agent` `name` `idno` `rs`
model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by bibl model.phrase pc w
Members model.pPart.editorial abbr choice expan subst model.pPart.transcriptional add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by modelimitedPhrase model.pPart.edit
Members abbr choice expan subst

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module tei
Used by model.pPart.edit
Members add corr del orig reg sic supplied unclear

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei
Used by listPerson particDesc
Members person

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

Module tei
Used by person
Members model.biblLike bibl biblFull listBibl model.eventLike model.persStateLike idno name

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by byline castItem closer date dateline docImprint head macro paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener time trailer
Members model.graphicLike formula graphic model.highlighted model.emphLike code foreign term title model.hlLike hi q model.lPart rhyme
model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

*Module* tei

*Used by* listPlace place settingDesc

*Members* place

---

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside `<profileDesc>` and appear multiple times.

*Module* tei

*Used by* profileDesc

*Members* abstract creation langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass

---

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. \[3.7. \] Simple Links and Cross-References

*Module* tei

*Used by* bibl cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase model.publicationStmtPart.detail relatedItem

*Members* ref

---

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent. \[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.\]

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt

*Members* distributor publisher

*Note* The agency child elements, while not required, are required if one of the detail child elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a detail child element without a preceding agency child element.

See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

---

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the `<publicationStmt>` element of the TEI header. \[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.\]

*Module* tei

*Used by* publicationStmt
model.quoteLike

Groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

*Module*: tei

*Used by*: model.attributable

*Members*: cit, quote

model.resource

Groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

*Module*: tei

*Used by*: TEI teiCorpus

*Members*: facsimile, text

model.respLike

Groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

*Module*: tei

*Used by*: editionStmt, model.biblPart, titleStmt

*Members*: author, editor, respStmt

model.segLike

Groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors] [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

*Module*: tei

*Used by*: bibl, model.phrase

*Members*: c, pc, s, seg, w

*Note*: The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

model.stageLike

Groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3. Other Types of Performance Text]

*Module*: tei

*Used by*: lg, model.inter, sp

*Members*: stage

*Note*: Stage directions are members of class inter: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart

Groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.
Module tei
Used by teiHeader
Members encodingDesc profileDesc xenoData

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a
title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. 4.6.
Title Pages

Module tei
Used by titlePage
Members argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph
graphic imprimatur titlePart

17.3 Attribute classes

att.anchoring (anchoring) provides attributes for use on annotations, e.g. notes and
groups of notes describing the existence and position of an anchor for annotations.

Module tei
Members note
Attributes Attributes

@anchored (anchored) indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of
reference for the note.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue
Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit
footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or
line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. page 218, lines
3–4). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location
is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value
true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy
text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a
specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols
used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be
recorded, use the n attribute.

@targetEnd (target end) points to the end of the span to which the note is
attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be
removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The
recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of
the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6.
range().
att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.  

Module tei

Members att.ascribed.directed q sp stage change

Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example, from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the who attribute. <castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role> </castItem> <castItem type="role"> <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role> <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc> </castItem> <!-- ... --> <sp who="#Barnardo"> <speaker>Bernardo</speaker> <ln="1">Who's there?</ln> </sp> <sp who="#Francisco"> <speaker>Francisco</speaker> <ln="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</ln> </sp>

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.ascribed.directed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual.

Module tei

Members q sp stage

Attributes

att.ascribed (@who)

@toWhom indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.
Status  Optional
Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Mary Pix’s The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the toWhom attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes toWhom to indicate the directionality of the action. <castItem type="role">
<role xml:id="emil">Emilius.</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
<role xml:id="lov">Lovisa</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
<role xml:id="serv">A servant</role>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
<sp who="#emil" toWhom="#lov">
<speaker>Emil.</speaker>
<l n="1">My love!</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#lov" toWhom="#emil">
<speaker>Lov.</speaker>
<l n="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</l>
</sp>
<stage who="emil"
toWhom="#serv">Pointing to her Woman.</stage>
<l>But that poor helpless wretch—</l>
</sp>

Note To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section 2.4.6. Correspondence Description, rather than a toWhom attribute.

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

3.11.3. Milestone Elements
Module tei
Members cb lb milestone pb
Attributes Attributes
@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.
Status Recommended
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include yes the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace
maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.
In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words lāðost and reord-berendum. <ab>...eƿesa tome iu icƿæs ȝeƿorden ƿita heardoſt .</ab>
att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

**Module** tei

**Attributes**

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a `<refsDecl>` element in the TEI header.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** teidata.text

**Note** The value of `cRef` should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target.

The `<refsDecl>` to use may be indicated with the `decls` attribute. Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given `<ptr>` element.

---

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

**Module** tei

**Attributes**

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Note** The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

**Module** tei

**Attributes**

---

321
@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume, entry.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.enumerated

*Suggested values include:*

- **volume** (volume) the element contains a volume number.
- **issue** the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.
- **page** (page) the element contains a page number or page range.
- **line** the element contains a line number or line range.
- **chapter** (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)
- **part** the element identifies a part of a book or collection.
- **column** the element identifies a column.
- **entry** the element identifies an entry number or label in a list of entries.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.word

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.word

**att.coordinated** provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

*Module* transcr

*Members* surface zone

*Attributes* Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata-pointer

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.numeric

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.numeric

@lrx gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.numeric

@lry gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* teidata.numeric

@points identifies a two dimensional area by means of a series of pairs of
numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* 3–∞ occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

**att.datable** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [3.6.4. Dates and Times][13.4. Dates]

**Module** tei

**Members**

**Attributes**

- @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* teidata.pointer

**Schematron**

```
<sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">
  <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>
```

*He was born on* `<date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>` `<date calendar="#julian" when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>`.

*Note* Note that the calendar attribute (unlike datingMethod defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, not the calendar to which the date is normalized.

- @period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.
  - *Status* Optional
  - *Datatype* teidata.pointer

This superclass provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

**att.datable.w3c** provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

[3.6.4. Dates and Times][13.4. Dates]

**Module** tei

**Members**

**Attributes**

- @when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.
**Status Optional**

**Datatype [teidata.temporal.w3c]**

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. `<p>`

```xml
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date when="--08">August</date>
<date when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>
```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the calendar="#julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

```xml
<opener>
<dateline>
<placeName>Dorchester, Village</placeName>
<date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
<salute>To Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday
<time when="12:00:00">noon</time>
</opener>
```

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status Optional**

**Datatype [teidata.temporal.w3c]**

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status Optional**

**Datatype [teidata.temporal.w3c]**

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status Optional**

**Datatype [teidata.temporal.w3c]**

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**Status Optional**

**Datatype [teidata.temporal.w3c]**

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]">`

`<sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other attdatable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`

*Schematron* `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>`
The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.

Example

```xml
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyy`, `--mm`, `--dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

**att.dimensions** provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

**Module** tei

**Members** add date del gap subst supplied time unclear

**Attributes**

- **@unit** names the unit used for the measurement
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`
  - **Legal values are:** chars, lines, pages, words, cm, millimetre, in

- **@quantity** specifies the length in the units specified
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `teidata.numeric`

- **@extent** indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `teidata.text`
  - `<gap extent="5 words"/>`
  - `<height extent="half the page"/>`

- **@scope** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.
  - **Status** Optional
  - **Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`
  - **Sample values include:** all, most, range
att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module: tei

Members: div lg

Attributes: Attributes

@org (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:

- composite: no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
- uniform: the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@sample indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:

- initial: division lacks material present at end in source.
- medial: division lacks material at start and end.
- final: division lacks material at start.
- unknown: position of sampled material within original unknown.
- complete: division is not a sample.[Default]

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module: tei

Members: bibl biblFull change revisionDesc

Attributes: Attributes

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status: Optional

Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Sample values include:

- approved
- candidate
- cleared
- deprecated
- draft [Default]
- embargoed
- expired
- frozen
- galley
- proposed
- published
- recommendation
- submitted
att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```xml
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed" who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#LB"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. Attributes

Example

```
att.editLike
```
Of Mans First Disobedience, and the Fruit
Of that Forbidden Tree, whose mortal tast
Brought Death into the World, and our woe,

Example

```xml
<listBibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
    <date>1937</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>
  </bibl>
</listBibl>

Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their strength maintaining the essentials of their ancient culture, still living their personal lives in zest and endless novelty of action, ... I saw myself still preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid consciousness;
```

att.fragmentable provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. 

Module tei

Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are:  

Y (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect
N (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]
I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element
M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.
att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes]

Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability bibl biblFull biblScope body byline castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expand extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front gap glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords label langUsage language lb lb licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p partDesc pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text getClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes att.global.rendition (@rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @next, @prev) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

  Status Optional
  Datatype ID

  Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.11. Reference Systems.

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.text

  Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.: it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a tag generated according to BCP 47.

  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.language

  <p>... The consequences of this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to ancestral territorial organization.</p>

  Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a
different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: default signals that the application’s default white-space processing modes are acceptable
preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.2. Global Attributes for Simple Analyses 17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module analysis

Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the ana attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.facs provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transc
17 THE TEI SIMPLEPRINT SCHEMA

Attributes  Attributes

@facs (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status  Optional

Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

att.global.linkedin provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment]

Module  linking

Members  att.global,TEI,ab,abbr,abstract,actor,add,addrLine,address,anchor,argument,author,availability,back,bibl,biblFull,biblScope,byline,c,castGroup,castItem,castList,catDesc,catRef,category,cb,cell,change,charDecl,charName,choice,cklassCode,classDecl,closer,code,corr,creation,date,dateline,del,desc,distributor,div,docAuthor,docDate,docEdition,docImprint,docTitle,edition,stmt,editor,editorialDecl,email,encodingDesc,epigraph,expan,extent,figDesc,figure,fileDesc,foreign,formula,front,fw,g,gap,glyph,glyphName,graphic,group,head,hi,ids,imprimatur,item,keywords,l,label,langUsage,languages,lb,lg,licence,listBibl,listChange,listPerson,listPlace,listPrefixDef,mapping,measure,milestone,name,namespace,note,notesStmt,num,opener,orig,n,p,particDesc,ph,pc,person,place,postscript,profileDef,profileDesc,projectDesc,publicationStmt,publisher,q,quote,ref,refsDecl,reg,relatedItem,rendition,resp,respStmt,revisionDesc,role,roleDesc,row,rs,s,salute,samplingDecl,seg,seriesStmt,set,settingDesc,sic,signed,sourceDesc,sp,speaker,stage,subst,supplied,surface,table,tagUsage,teiCorpus,teiHeader,term,textClass,time,title,titlePage,titlePart,titleStmt,trailer,unclear,w,xenoData,zone

Attributes  Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status  Optional

Datatype  1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```xml
<group>
  <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
    xml:lang="mi">
    <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>…</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</group>
```
An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.

In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using corresp. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the corresp and the tag pointed to by the corresp inherit the value from their immediate parent.

<!- In a placeography called "places.xml" -->
<place xml:id="LOND1"
corresp="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENII">
  <placeName>London</placeName>
  <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>

<!- In a literary personography called "people.xml" -->
<person xml:id="LOND2"
corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #GENII">
  <persName type="lit">London</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Allegorical character representing the city of London</p>
  </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENII"
corresp="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2">
  <persName type="lit">London’s Genius</persName>
  <note>
    <p>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an allegorical character in mayoral shows.</p>
  </note>
</person>

In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Note It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute.
**att.global.rendition** provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators]

**Module** tei

**Members**

att.global TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expand extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p particDesc ph pb pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

**Attributes**

@rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.

**Status** Optional

**Datatype** 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

**Suggested values include:** simple:allcaps all capitals

  - simple:allcaps
  - simple:allcaps
  - simple:bottombraced
  - simple:boxed
  - simple:centre
  - simple:cursive
  - simple:display
  - simple:doublestrikethrough
  - simple:doubleunderline
  - simple:dropcap
  - simple:float
  - simple:hyphen
  - simple:inline
  - simple:justify
  - simple:italic
  - simple:larger
  - simple:left
  - simple:leftbraced
  - simple:letterspace
  - simple:leftbraced for emphasis
Note The rendition attribute is used in a very similar way to the class attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

If rendition is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with rend. Where both rendition and rend are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a rendition element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the scheme attribute.

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@rendition]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $val in tokenize(normalize-space(@rendition),\'\s+\') return starts-with($val,\'simple:\') or (starts-with($val,\'\#\') and //tei:rendition[@xml:id=substring($val,2)])"/> <s:assert test="every $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Each of the rendition values in "<s:value-of select="@rendition"/>" must point to a local ID or to a token in the Simple scheme (<s:value-of select="$results"/>).</s:assert> </s:rule>

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:*[@corresp]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@corresp),\'\s+\') return starts-with($t,\'#\') and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/> <s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@corresp"/>" must point to an ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>).</s:report> </s:rule>
att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.5. Simple Editorial Changes [1.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes 17.3. Spans and Interpretations [1.1.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents]

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category eb cell change char charDec charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expan extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText formula front fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords l label langUsage language lb lg licence list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener orig p locality pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote ref refsDecl reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDecl sig signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teicorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.probCert

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note To reduce the ambiguity of a resp pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that resp be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.).

Example

Blessed are the

<choice>
  <sic>cheesemakers</sic>
  <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.

Example
att.global.source provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility 3.3.3. Quotation 8.3.4. Writing]

Module tei

Members att.global TEI ab abbr abstract actor add addrLine address anchor argument author availability back bibl biblFull biblScope body byline c castGroup castItem castList catDesc catRef category cb cell change char charDecl charName choice cit classCode classDecl closer code corr creation date dateline del desc distributor div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email encodingDesc epigraph expand extend facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc floatingText foreign formula front fw g gap glyph glyphName graphic group head hi idno imprimatur item keywords label langUsage language lb lg licence listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef mapping measure milestone name namespace note notesStmt num opener p p pc person place postscript prefixDef profileDesc projectDesc pubPlace publicationStmt publisher quote ref refsDecl ref reg relatedItem rendition resp respStmt revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc row rs s salute samplingDecl seg seriesStmt set settingDesc sic signed sourceDesc sp speaker stage subst supplied surface table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer unclear w xenoData zone

Attributes

@source specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The source attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.

On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.
If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated.

**Example**

```xml
<p>
  <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>) tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
  <!-- ... -->
</p>
```

**Example**

```xml
<p>
  <!-- ... -->
  <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we seem to know.</quote>
  <!-- ... -->
</p>
```

```xml
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
</bibl>
```

**Example**

```xml
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named `<p>` available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

**Example**

```xml
<schemaSpec ident="myODD" source="mycompiledODD.xml">
  <!-- further declarations specifying the components required -->
</schemaSpec>
```

Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml.

**att.internetMedia** provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

**Module** tei

**Members**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>att.media</th>
<th>graphic</th>
<th>ref</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**Attributes** Attributes

- **@mimeType** (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type
  - **Status**: Optional
  - **Datatype**: 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.word` separated by whitespace
Example. In this example mimeType is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```xml
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8" target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

Note. This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The mimeType attribute must have a value taken from this list.

**att.linguistic** provides a set of attributes concerning linguistic features of tokens, for usage within token-level elements, specifically `<w>` and `<pc>` in the analysis module. [17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation]

**Module** analysis

**Members** `pc` `w`

**Attributes** Attributes

- **@lemma** provides a lemma (base form) for the word, typically uninflected and serving both as an identifier (e.g. in dictionary contexts, as a headword), and as a basis for potential inflections.
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** `teidata.text`
  
  ```xml
  <w lemma="wife">wives</w>
  <w lemma="Arznei">Artzeneyen</w>
  ```

- **@lemmaRef** provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** `teidata.pointer`
  
  ```xml
  <w type="verb" lemma="hit" lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/hitvb.xml">hit</w>
  <w type="suffix">ing</w>
  ```

These attributes make it possible to encode simple language corpora and to add a layer of linguistic information to any tokenized resource. See section 17.4.2. Lightweight Linguistic Annotation for discussion.

**att.measurement** provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

**Module** tei

**Members** `measure`

**Attributes** Attributes

- **@unit** (unit) indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.
  
  **Status** Optional
  
  **Datatype** `teidata.enumerated`
Suggested values include: m (metre) SI base unit of length
  kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass
  s (second) SI base unit of time
  Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency
  Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress
  Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance
  L (litre) 1 dm³
  t (tonne) 10³ kg
  ha (hectare) 1 hm²
  Å (ångström) 10⁻¹⁰ m
  mL (millilitre)
  cm (centimetre)
  dB (decibel) see remarks, below
  kbit (kilobit) 10⁸ or 1000 bits
  Kibit (kibibit) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bits
  kB (kilobyte) 10³ or 1000 bytes
  KiB (kibibyte) 2¹⁰ or 1024 bytes
  MB (megabyte) 10⁶ or 1 000 000 bytes
  MiB (mebibyte) 2²⁰ or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the unit attribute may be left unspecified. Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further


@unitRef points to a unique identifier stored in the xml:id of a <unitDef> element that defines a unit of measure.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@quantity (quantity) specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@commodity (commodity) indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

Schematron <sch:rule context=""tei:*[@unitRef]">
  <sch:report test=""@unit"" role=""info">The @unit attribute may be unnecessary when @unitRef is present.</sch:report></sch:rule>

Note This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.
So weren’t you gonna buy <measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure>, baby?

So won’t you go and buy <measure quantity="1.893" unit="L" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure>, baby?

The unit should normally be named using the standard symbol for an SI unit (see further http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/; http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

**att.media** provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

*Module* tei

*Members* graphic

*Attributes*

- **att.internetMedia**
  - `@mimeTyp e` (where the media are displayed, indicates the display width)
    
    *Status* Optional
    
    *Datatype* teidata.outputMeasurement
  
  - **@height** (where the media are displayed, indicates the display height)
    
    *Status* Optional
    
    *Datatype* teidata.outputMeasurement
  
  - **@scale** (where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size)
    
    *Status* Optional
    
    *Datatype* teidata.numeric

**att.metrical** defines a set of attributes which certain elements may use to represent metrical information. [6.4. Rhyme and Metrical Analysis]

*Module* verse

*Members*

- **att.divLike**
  
  - `div` [lg]

- **att.segLike**
  
  - `c pc s seg w` [l]

*Attributes*

- **@rhyme** (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.
  
    *Status* Recommended
    
    *Datatype* token

*Note* By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for *met* by use of the `<metDecl>` element in the TEI header.

When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.
**att.milestoneUnit** provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone. 

**3.11.3. Milestone Elements**

- **2.3.6.3. Milestone**

**Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration**

---

**Module core**

**Members milestone**

**Attributes**

- @unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

  **Status Required**

  **Datatype** teidata.enumerated

  **Suggested values include:**

  - page physical page breaks (synonymous with the `<pb>` element).

  - column column breaks.

  - line line breaks (synonymous with the `<lb>` element).

  - book any units termed book, liber, etc.

  - poem individual poems in a collection.

  - canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

  - speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

  - stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

  - act acts within a play.

  - scene scenes within a play or act.

  - section sections of any kind.

  - absent passages not present in the reference edition.

  - unnumbered passages present in the text, but not to be included as part of the reference.

  - `<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
  ...
  ...
  `<milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/>
  ...

  **Note** If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not present in the reference edition, the special value absent may be used as the value of unit. The normal interpretation is that the reference edition does not contain the text which follows, until the next `<milestone>` tag for the edition in question is encountered.

  In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be appropriate (e.g. Stephanus for the Stephanus numbers in Plato).

  The type attribute may be used to characterize the unit boundary in any respect other than simply identifying the type of unit, for example as word-breaking or not.

---

**att.naming** provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. 

**3.6.1. Referring Strings**

- **13.3.6. Names and Nyms**

---

**Module tei**

**Members att.personal|name| author| editor| pubPlace| rs**
Attributes Attributes @att.canonical (@ref)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.notated provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content.

Module tei
Members c formula quote s seg w

Attributes Attributes

@notation names the notation used for the content of the element.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers 2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

Module header
Members prefixDef

Attributes Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.pattern

Note The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the replacementPattern attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a replacement pattern, that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the matchPattern which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

Status Required
Datatype teidata.replacement
Note: The strings $1$, $2$ etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by \texttt{matchPattern} (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression.

If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as \texttt{\$24}.

\texttt{att.personal} (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name.  \[13.2.1. Personal Names\]

\texttt{Module tei}
\texttt{Members name}
\texttt{Attributes Attributes} \texttt{att.naming (@role, @nymRef) att.canonical (@ref)}

\texttt{@full} indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.
\texttt{Status Optional}
\texttt{Datatype teidata.enumerated}

\texttt{Legal values are: yes} (yes) the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]
\texttt{abb} (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.
\texttt{init} (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

\texttt{@sort} (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.
\texttt{Status Optional}
\texttt{Datatype teidata.count}

\texttt{att.placement} provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.  \[3.5.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions\]
\[11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions\]

\texttt{Module tei}
\texttt{Members add figure fw head label note stage trailer}
\texttt{Attributes Attributes}

\texttt{@place} specifies where this item is placed.
\texttt{Status Recommended}
\texttt{Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace}

\texttt{Legal values are: above} above the line
\texttt{below} below the line
\texttt{top} at the top of the page
\texttt{top-right} at the top right of the page
\texttt{top-left} at the top left of the page
att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators 3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References]

Module tei
Members catRef licence note ref term
Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by target, using a language tag generated according to BCP 47.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.language
Schematron

<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]">
  <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on @target is specified.</sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
    target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
    type="tuv"
    targetLang="pl"/>
  <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
    target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
    type="tuv"
    targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>

In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines
pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

*Note* The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

*Status* Optional

*Schematron* `<s:rule context="tei:*[@target]"> <s:let name="results" value="for $t in tokenize(normalize-space(@target),\"\s+\") return starts-with($t,\"#\") and not(id(substring($t,2)))"/>
<s:report test="some $x in $results satisfies $x"> Error: Every local pointer in "<s:value-of select="@target"/"> must point to an ID in this document (<s:value-of select="$results"/>)</s:report>
</s:rule>

*Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `teidata.pointer` separated by whitespace

*Note* One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

*Status* Optional

*Datatype* `teidata.enumerated`

*Legal values are:* all if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer’s target.

*Note* If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

---

**att.resourced** provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

*Module* `tei`

*Members* `graphic`

*Attributes* Attributes

@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

*Status* Required
att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. 

Module: tei
Members: c pc s seg w
Attributes: Attributes att.metrical (@rhyme) att.fragmentable (@part)

@function (function) characterizes the function of the segment.

Note: Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a `<cl>`, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a `<phr>`, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content.

Module: tei
Members: bibl biblFull idno item list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace person place term
Attributes: Attributes @sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Note: The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under fourth, and McCoy may be alphabetized under maccoy, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order alphabetized between a- and AA. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.
att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Schematron The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the current element <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

att.styleDef provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members rendition

Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: css Cascading Stylesheet Language

  xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

  free Informal free text description

  other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.

@schemeVersion supplies a version number for the style language provided in scheme.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.versionNumber

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@schemeVersion]">
<sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')">@schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </sch:assert> </sch:rule>
att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. 

att.timed

Module: tei

Attributes:

@start indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.
Status: Optional
Datatype: teidata.pointer

Note: If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

@end indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.
Status: Optional
Datatype: teidata.pointer

Note: If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

att.transcriptional

Module: tei

Attributes:

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.
Status: Optional
Datatype: teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: duplicate all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.
shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.count


Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr add anchor bibl castItem cb change cit corr date del desc div figure floatingText fw g group head idno label lb lg list listBibl listChange listPerson listPlace mapping measure milestone name note num pb pc place quote ref reg relatedItem rhyme rs s seg surface table teiCorpus term text time title titlePage titlePart trailer w xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated

    <div type="verse">
        <head>Night in Tarras</head>
        <lg type="stanza">
            <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
            <l>…</l>
        </lg>
        <lg type="stanza">
            <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
        </lg>
    </div>
Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.3.

Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists.

att.written provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [1.3.1. Attribute Classes]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional [add del subst] ab closer div figure fw head hi label note opener p postscript salute seg signed text trailer zone

Attributes Attributes

@hand points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

17.4 Macros

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei

Used by desc figDesc rendition tagUsage

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by ab add corr del docEdition hi imprimatur orig p ref reg rhyme salute seg sic signed supplied title titlePart unclear

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module tei
Used by abbr actor addrLine author biblScope distributor docAuthor docDate edition editor email expant extent foreign fw label measure name num pubPlace publisher role roleDesc rs s speaker term

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.attributable"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```
macrophraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1. Standard Content Models]

Module tei
Used by classCode language resp

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macrophraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*  
```

macrospecialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3. The TEI Class System]

Module tei
Used by cell change item licence note q quote stage

Content model

```
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
    <classRef key="model.inter"/>
    <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
macrospecialPara = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.divPart | model.global )*  
```
**macro.xtext** (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

*Module* tei
*Used by*  

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <TextNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
macro.xtext = (text | model.gLike)*
```

### 17.5 Datatypes

**teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

*Module* tei
*Used by* **teidata.probCert**

**Content model**

```xml
<content>
  <valList type="closed">
    <valItem ident="high"/>
    <valItem ident="medium"/>
    <valItem ident="low"/>
    <valItem ident="unknown"/>
  </valList>
</content>
```

**Declaration**

```
teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

**Note** Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

**teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

*Module* tei
*Used by* **Element:**

- `table/@rows`
- `table/@cols`
- `tagUsage/@occurs`
- `tagUsage/@withId`
- `zone/@rotate`
teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei
Used by
Content model

<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
</content>

Declaration

<teidata.duration.iso> = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }</teidata.duration.iso>

Example

<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>

Example

<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>

Example

<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>

Example

<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>

Example

<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times.

Teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

355
Module tei

Used by

Content model

<content> <dataRef name="duration"/> </content>

Declaration

teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration

Example

<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>

Example

<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>

Example

<date dur="P7D">a week</date>

Example

<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>

Note

A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first time number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the W3C specification.

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by

Element:

• abbr/@type
• availability/@status
• castItem/@type
• cell/@role
• desc/@type
• formula/@notation
• fw/@type
• gap/@reason
• gap/@agent
• idno/@type
• list/@type
• measure/@type
• name/@type
• num/@type
teidata.language

• pc/@force
• pc/@unit
• person/@role
• person/@age
• q/@type
• rendition/@scope
• row/@role
• stage/@type
• surface/@attachment
• title/@type
• title/@level
• titlePage/@type
• titlePart/@type
• unclear/@reason
• unclear/@agent

Content model `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1. Language Identification]

Module tei

Used by Element:
• language/@ident

Content model
```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="language"/>
    <valList>
      <valItem ident=""/>
    </valList>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`

Note The values for this attribute are language tags as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A language tag, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (\-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following
subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

**language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at [http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry). It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

**script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at [http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html](http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html). The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

**region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at [https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/](https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/). The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at [http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm](http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm).

**variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags.

**extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

**private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding `<language>` element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been grandfathered from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding `<language>` element in the TEI header.

Examples include

- **sn** Shona
- **zh-TW** Taiwanese
- **zh-Hant-HK** Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong
- **en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone
pl Polish
es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico
es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

**teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `tagUsage/@gi`

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="Name"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.name = xsd:Name`

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see [http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name)): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

**teidata.namespace** defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `namespace/@name`

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

*Note* The range of syntactically valid values is defined by [RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3986).

**teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `num/@value`

*Content model* `<content>
<alternate>
<dataRef name="double"/>
<dataRef name="token" restriction="\-?\d+/\-?\d+/\-?\d+/\-?\d+/\-?\d+"/>
<dataRef name="decimal"/>
</alternate>
</content>`

*Declaration*
teidata.numeric =
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, E notation, a variant of exponential notation, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```xml
teidata.outputMeasurement =
  token
  { pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
  }
```

Example

```xml
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath, all on a white background.</figDesc>
  <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.
**teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* `<content> <dataRef name="token"/></content>`

*Declaration* `teidata.pattern = token`

*Note* A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` matches each of the three strings). Wikipedia

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

---

**teidata.point** defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model* 

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
</content>
```


*Example* 

```
<facsimile>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
    <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
      <graphic url="handwriting.png"/>
    </zone>
  </surface>
</facsimile>
```

*Note* A point is defined by two numeric values, which should be expressed as decimal numbers. Neither number can end in a decimal point. E.g., both 0.0,84.2 and 0,84 are allowed, but 0.,84. is not.

---

**teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

*Module* tei

*Used by* Element:

- `catRef/@scheme`
change/@target
classCode/@scheme
g/@ref
keywords/@scheme
relatedItem/@target

Content model

<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/></content>

Declaration

tedata.pointer = xsd:anyURI

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/

teidata.prefix defines a range of values that may function as a URI scheme name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

prefixDef/@ident

Content model

<content>
<dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[a-z][a-z0-9\-\./]+"/>
</content>

Declaration

tedata.prefix = token { pattern = "[a-z][a-z0-9\-\./]+" }

Note This datatype is used to constrain a string of characters to one that can be used as a URI scheme name according to RFC 3986 section 3.1. Thus only the 26 lowercase letters a–z, the 10 digits 0–9, the plus sign, the period, and the hyphen are permitted, and the value must start with a letter.

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

<content>
<alternate>
    <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
    <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
</alternate>
teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCert

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="double"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.probability = xsd:double`

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true.

---

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.replacement = text`

---

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- `@person/@sex`

Content model `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration `teidata.sex = teidata.word`

Note Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property [http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats](http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats) (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 Representation of Human Sexes [http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip](http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip) (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People [http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection](http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection).

---

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition specification.
Module tei
Used by Element:
  • docDate/@when

Content model
```
<content>
  <alternate>
    <dataRef name="date"/>
    <dataRef name="gYear"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gDay"/>
    <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
    <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
    <dataRef name="time"/>
    <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration
```
teidata.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date | xsd:gYear | xsd:gMonth | xsd:gDay | xsd:gYearMonth | xsd:gMonthDay | xsd:time | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module tei
Used by Element:
  • rendition/@selector

Content model
```
<content> <dataRef name="string"/></content>
```

Declaration
```
teidata.text = string
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single token in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei
Used by Element:
  • listChange/@ordered
teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- teiCorpus/@version

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }
```

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]+(\.[\d]+)[a-z]*[\d]+{0,3}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]+(\.[\d]+)[a-z]*[\d]+{0,3}" }
```
**teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

*Module* tei

*Used by* teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:

- code/@lang
- rhyme/@label
- supplied/@reason

*Content model*

```xml
<content>
  <dataRef name="token"
    restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/>
</content>
```

*Declaration*  

```xml
teidata.versionNumber = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" }
```

*Note* Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

**teidata.xmlName** defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*

```xml
<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>
```

*Declaration*  

```xml
teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName
```

*Note* The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.

---

**teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression.

*Module* tei

*Used by*

*Content model*  

```xml
<content> <textNode/></content>
```

*Declaration*  

```xml
teidata.xpath = text
```

*Note* Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in 6.2.

When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the article at OWASP.

---

### 17.6 Summary of changes

The TEI simplePrint schema uses the TEI infrastructure and gaiji modules unchanged.

*Module* tei

*Module* gaiji
A subset of 45 elements is selected from the TEI header module. In addition, elements `<particDesc>` and `<settingDesc>` are provided from the corpus module. The class membership of `<particDesc>` is changed to ensure that it can only appear inside `<profileDesc>`. Secondly, a Schematron rule is added to the `<text>` element to ensure that elements `<term>` and `<biblFull>` can appear only in the header element, even though the schema permits them additionally in text.

Module header
Module corpus

Some attributes and attribute classes are removed. The range of values available for several attributes is constrained.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>att.datcat</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.declarable</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.declaring</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.ranging</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.linking</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.canonical</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.editLike</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.pointing</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.global.rendition</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.placement</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>att.dimensions</td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following unused model classes are removed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>model.certLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.egLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.entryPart</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.glossLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.oddDecl</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.offsetLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.pPart.msdesc</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.placeNamePart</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.placeStateLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>model.specDescLike</td>
<td>delete</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following elements are modified by the TEI simplePrint specification, mostly by the addition of a processing model, but in other cases by additional constraints on the attributes they may have, or the values those attributes may take. Additional examples are also provided for some of them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;ab&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;abbr&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;actor&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;add&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;address&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;addrLine&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;am&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;anchor&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;argument&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;author&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Element</td>
<td>Change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;back&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;bibl&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;biblFull&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;biblScope&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;body&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;byline&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;c&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;castGroup&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;castItem&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;castList&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;cb&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;cell&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;choice&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;cit&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;closer&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;code&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;corr&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;date&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;dateline&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;del&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;desc&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;div&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;docAuthor&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;docDate&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;docEdition&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;docImprint&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;docTitle&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;editor&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;editorialDecl&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;email&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;epigraph&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;ex&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;expan&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;figDesc&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;figure&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;floatingText&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;foreign&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;formula&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;front&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;fw&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;g&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;gap&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;graphic&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;group&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;head&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;hi&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;imprimatur&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;item&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;lb&gt;</code></td>
<td>change</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
17.6 Summary of changes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Element</th>
<th>change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;time&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;title&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;titlePage&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;titlePart&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;trailer&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;unclear&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>&lt;w&gt;</code></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>